

**COMMUNICATIONS
ALLIANCE LTD**



AUSTRALIAN STANDARD

AS/CA S009:2020

Installation requirements for customer cabling
(Wiring Rules)

Australian Standard – Installation requirements for customer cabling (Wiring Rules)

This Standard was issued in draft form for public comment as DR AS/CA S009:2019

First published as AS/ACIF S009:2001

Second Edition as AS/ACIF S009:2006

Third Edition as AS/CA S009:2013

Fourth edition as AS/CA S009:2020, published on 20 August 2020

ISBN: 1 74000 460 4

Communications Alliance Ltd (formerly Australian Communications Industry Forum Ltd) was formed in 2006 to provide a unified voice for the Australian communications industry and to lead it into the next generation of converging networks, technologies and services.

Disclaimers

1. Notwithstanding anything contained in this Standard:
 - (a) Communications Alliance disclaims responsibility (including where Communications Alliance or any of its officers, employees, agents or contractors has been negligent) for any direct or indirect loss, damage, claim, or liability any person may incur as a result of any:
 - (i) reliance on or compliance with this Standard;
 - (ii) inaccuracy or inappropriateness of this Standard; or
 - (iii) inconsistency of this Standard with any law; and
 - (b) Communications Alliance disclaims responsibility (including where Communications Alliance or any of its officers, employees, agents or contractors has been negligent) for ensuring compliance by any person with this Standard.
2. The above disclaimers will not apply to the extent they are inconsistent with any relevant legislation.

Copyright

© Communications Alliance Ltd 2020

This document is copyright and must not be used except as permitted below or under the Copyright Act 1968. You may reproduce and publish this document in whole or in part for your or your organisation's own personal or internal compliance, educational or non-commercial purposes. You must not alter or amend this document in any way. You must not reproduce or publish this document for commercial gain without the prior written consent of Communications Alliance. Organisations wishing to reproduce or publish this document for commercial gain (e.g. for distribution to subscribers to an information service) should apply to Communications Alliance by contacting the Communications Alliance Commercial Manager at info@commsalliance.com.au.

FOREWORD

General

This Standard was prepared by the CECRP/WC18 *Cabling Standards Working Committee* and most recently revised by the WC80 : *Customer Cabling Installation and Cabling Products Working Committee*. It is one of a series of Telecommunication Standards developed under the Memorandum of Understanding between the Australian Communications Authority (ACA) and the Australian Communications Industry Forum (ACIF).

Note: On 1 July 2005 the ACA became the Australian Communications and Media Authority (ACMA) and the Memorandum of Understanding continues in effect as if the reference to the ACA was a reference to the ACMA.

Communications Alliance was formed in 2006 and continues the functions previously fulfilled by ACIF.

This Standard is a revision of AS/ACIF S009:2013 *Installation requirements for customer cabling (Wiring Rules)*.

This Standard is the result of a consensus among representatives on the Communications Alliance Working Committee to produce it as an Australian Standard.

Standards revision

Australian Standards (AS/ACIF and AS/CA Standards) developed by Communications Alliance are updated according to the needs of the industry, by amendments or revision. Users of these Standards should make sure that they possess the latest amendments or editions. Representations concerning the need for a change to this AS/CA Standard should be addressed to—

The Project Manager
Customer Equipment and Cable Reference Panel
Communications Alliance
PO Box 444
Milsons Point NSW 1565

Regulatory notice

The 2020 version of AS/CA S009 is mandated by the *Telecommunications Cabling Provider Rules 2014 (CPRs)* and comes into force on the date of effect specified under Clause 2.3 of the 2020 version of AS/CA S009. AS/CA S009:2013 remains in force for an eighteen-month transition period after the date of effect.

Section 4.1(2)(b) of the CPRs requires that an unregistered cabling provider, undertaking any cabling work, must be supervised at all times while performing cabling work, by a suitably registered cabling provider.

Details on cabling regulations can be obtained from the ACMA website at www.acma.gov.au or by contacting the ACMA at:

Australian Communications and Media Authority
PO Box 13112
Law Courts PO
Melbourne VIC 8010
Australia

Telephone: 1800 850 115 (Australia)
Telephone: +61 3 9963 6800
Facsimile: +61 3 9963 6899
Email: info@acma.gov.au

Introduction

This introduction for the AS/CA S009 **Installation requirements for customer cabling (Wiring Rules)** Standard is not an authoritative section of this Standard and is only provided as guidance for the user of the Standard to outline its objectives, the factors that have been taken into account in its development and to list the principal differences between the new and the previous edition.

The reader is directed to the Clauses of the Standard for the specific requirements and to the ACMA for the applicable CPRs arrangements.

Note: The CPRs can be obtained from the Federal Register of Legislation website at <https://www.legislation.gov.au/Series/F2014L01684>.

The objective of this Standard is to set out minimum requirements that may ensure the safety and integrity of a Cabling installation and of the Telecommunications Network to which it is, or will be, connected, and to provide additional guidance for compliance with these requirements.

The objective of this revision is to update requirements to accommodate regulatory and technological changes and feedback from industry.

The principle differences between this edition of AS/CA S009 and the previous edition are—

- (i) the regulatory information has been updated including a clarification regarding unsupervised cabling providers.
- (ii) the Warning Notice has been revised with a new focus on ES3 and other hazardous energy sources, and remote powering.
- (iii) the References section has been restructured, with publications only referred to in notes and informative appendices relocated to a new Bibliography.
- (iv) all references to regulatory and other publications have been updated, including guidance on applying recent editions of referenced Standards.
- (v) defined terms used in the requirements are now displayed in 'Leading Capitals' for ease of identification.
- (vi) new voltage, electrical energy source (ES1, ES2, ES3) and related terminology used in AS/NZS 62368.1 has been introduced. Appendix P specifies how equivalence between AS/NZS 62368.1 and AS/NZS 60950.1 is to be implemented, together with a table comparing AS/NZS 60950.1 and AS/NZS 62368.1 terms.
- (vii) new definitions, including generic cabling, movable cabling, types of persons, registered engineers, arm's reach and RFT circuits.
- (viii) new tables (on cabling, energy source and voltage classifications, persons, service/circuit classifications) have been added to provide a quick reference to the alphabetical listing of terms and definitions used in this Standard.
- (ix) new conductor size requirements and temperature recommendations for generic cabling and cabling linking distributors (Clause 5.6).

- (x) new identification and warning requirements for ES3 generic cabling (Clause 5.7).
- (xi) new product and installation requirements for ES3 special application circuits (Clause 5.7.3).
- (xii) new requirements for plug terminated cabling (Clause 5.9), superseding the existing 'Connection of customer equipment' requirements.
- (xiii) new requirements for movable cabling including flexibility and strain relief (Clause 5.10).
- (xiv) requirements for separation and subducting of hazardous services have been updated to address new ES1, ES2 and ES3 terminology (Clauses 8.3.3 and 9.3).
- (xv) requirements for optical fibre systems have been updated including for inspecting apparatus, laser warning marking, safety and labelling (Clause 11.1).
- (xvi) requirements for optical fibre systems are now independent of the hazard level classifications of the services (Clause 11.1).
- (xvii) requirements for the protection against contact with live parts of sockets have been revised to address ES1, ES2 and ES3 circuits (Clause 15.2).
- (xviii) the types of TOs that may be movable, and how they are attached and restrained, has now been specified (Clause 15.5).
- (xix) new requirements for pendant TOs, how they are to be suspended and how the associated cable is to be restrained (Clause 15.6).
- (xx) requirements for cable flammability and fire stopping have been revised to better align with the Building Code of Australia (the NCC) (Clause 16).
- (xxi) requirements for cabling between buildings have been updated, especially for paired conductors and use of surge suppression and line isolation devices (Clause 17.3).
- (xxii) requirements for pits and access holes in vehicular areas have been updated, and there is a new recommendation for provision of information about pit and access hole covers which are not opened with the typical Australian tool (Clause 18.1).
- (xxiii) new requirements for installing an earthing bar/terminal at distributors terminating outdoor customer cabling (Clause 20.20).
- (xxiv) guidance on compatibility of 6P modular plugs and 8P modular sockets (Appendix C).
- (xxv) Appendix F has been rewritten to address power feeding in telecommunications networks, including the ES1, ES2 and ES3 Electrical Energy Source classifications.
- (xxvi) Appendix G has been rewritten to address ES3 separation of telecommunications and electrical circuits, including a rationalised Table G1 summarising the distances.

- (xxvii) the network boundary information in Appendix J now includes network boundaries using fibre, HFC and wireless terminations (Table J1).
- (xxviii) a new Appendix N providing safety guidance on installing metallic cables between buildings.
- (xxix) a new Appendix O providing guidance on nbn Fibre to The Curb (FTTC) connectivity.

WARNING

This Standard includes requirements intended to ensure the safety of customers, cabling providers, carrier staff and the general public.

Telecommunications cabling specified within this Standard may carry hazardous levels of energy.

ES3 energy sources as classified in this Standard are deemed hazardous.

This Standard has been developed to support ES3 services over generic cabling, but only to a maximum voltage of 400 V and a maximum current as specified in the AS/NZS 11801.1 or ISO/IEC 11801-1 Standards. At the time of publication, the current limit was 750 mA per conductor (1,500 mA per pair).

An ES3 circuit exceeding 400 V or exceeding current as specified in the AS/NZS 11801.1 or ISO/IEC 11801-1 Standards on generic cabling is deemed by this Standard as not fit for intended purpose as it does not provide adequate safeguards to ensure the safety of customers, cabling providers, carrier staff and the general public.

Excessive voltages or currents on cabling may render equipment and cable inoperable or cause permanent damage and may be a source of ignition.

This Standard does not address all implementations of power feeding. An engineered solution may be needed for the design and implementation of the cabling system.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	INTERPRETATIVE GUIDELINES	1
	1.1 Categories of requirements	1
	1.2 Definitions, expressions and terms	1
	1.3 Notes	1
	1.4 Units and symbols	1
	1.5 Referenced safety standards transitional matters	1
	1.6 Referenced publications	2
2	SCOPE AND GENERAL	3
	2.1 Scope	3
	2.2 Objective	3
	2.3 Date of effect	4
	2.4 Limitations	4
	2.5 Basic aims	4
	2.6 Safety of the installation	4
	2.7 Network integrity	5
	2.8 Other industry standards or codes	5
	2.9 Topics	6
3	REFERENCES	7
4	DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS	9
	4.1 Definitions by classification	9
	4.1.1 <i>Cable / cabling</i>	9
	4.1.2 <i>Energy source / voltage classifications</i>	9
	4.1.3 <i>Persons</i>	10
	4.1.4 <i>Service/circuit classifications</i>	10
	4.2 Definitions	10
	4.2.1 <i>aerial cabling</i>	10
	4.2.2 <i>arm's reach</i>	10
	4.2.3 <i>bearer</i>	11
	4.2.4 <i>building</i>	11
	4.2.5 <i>building code</i>	12
	4.2.6 <i>building entry point</i>	12
	4.2.7 <i>cable</i>	12
	4.2.8 <i>cable lug</i>	12
	4.2.9 <i>cabling</i>	12
	4.2.10 <i>cabling product</i>	12
	4.2.11 <i>cabling provider</i>	12
	4.2.12 <i>Cabling Provider Rules</i>	12
	4.2.13 <i>cabling work</i>	12

4.2.14	<i>carriage service</i>	13
4.2.15	<i>carriage service provider</i>	13
4.2.16	<i>carrier</i>	13
4.2.17	<i>catenary support system</i>	13
4.2.18	<i>Communications Earth System (CES)</i>	13
4.2.19	<i>Communications Earth Terminal (CET)</i>	13
4.2.20	<i>conductive pole or structure</i>	14
4.2.21	<i>conduit</i>	14
4.2.22	<i>connected</i>	14
4.2.23	<i>cord</i>	14
4.2.24	<i>cordage</i>	14
4.2.25	<i>cross-connection</i>	14
4.2.26	<i>customer</i>	14
4.2.27	<i>Customer Access Equipment (CAE)</i>	14
4.2.28	<i>customer cable</i>	15
4.2.29	<i>customer cabling</i>	15
4.2.30	<i>customer equipment</i>	15
4.2.31	<i>damp location</i>	15
4.2.32	<i>designated distributor</i>	16
4.2.33	<i>differential earth clamp</i>	16
4.2.34	<i>distributor</i>	16
4.2.35	<i>duct</i>	16
4.2.36	<i>Earth Potential Rise (EPR)</i>	16
4.2.37	<i>electrically conductive element</i>	17
4.2.38	<i>enclosure</i>	17
4.2.39	<i>end-user</i>	17
4.2.40	<i>EPR hazard zone</i>	17
4.2.41	<i>equipotential bonding</i>	17
4.2.42	<i>Electrical energy source class 1 (ES1)</i>	17
4.2.43	<i>Electrical energy source class 2 (ES2)</i>	17
4.2.44	<i>Electrical energy source class 3 (ES3)</i>	17
4.2.45	<i>ES3 generic circuit</i>	17
4.2.46	<i>ES3 special application circuit</i>	18
4.2.47	<i>facility</i>	18
4.2.48	<i>fire compartment boundary element</i>	18
4.2.49	<i>first socket</i>	18
4.2.50	<i>functional earth</i>	18
4.2.51	<i>generic cabling</i>	18
4.2.52	<i>hazardous area (explosive atmosphere)</i>	19
4.2.53	<i>hazardous service</i>	19

4.2.54	High Voltage (HV)	19
4.2.55	HV power	19
4.2.56	HV site	20
4.2.57	indoor cabling	20
4.2.58	ICT network	20
4.2.59	instructed person	20
4.2.60	jumper	20
4.2.61	lead-in cabling	20
4.2.62	line	20
4.2.63	line isolation device	20
4.2.64	Low Frequency Induction (LFI)	21
4.2.65	Low Voltage (LV)	21
4.2.66	LV power	21
4.2.67	Main Distribution Frame (MDF)	21
4.2.68	mains	21
4.2.69	movable cabling	21
4.2.70	network boundary	22
4.2.71	Network Termination Device (NTD)	22
4.2.72	ordinary person	23
4.2.73	outdoor cabling	23
4.2.74	patch cord	23
4.2.75	patch panel	23
4.2.76	plug	23
4.2.77	port	23
4.2.78	power feeding	23
4.2.79	premises	24
4.2.80	protective earth	24
4.2.81	protective earthing conductor	24
4.2.82	readily accessible	24
4.2.83	registered engineer	24
4.2.84	restricted access area	25
4.2.85	RFT circuit	25
4.2.86	RFT-C circuit	25
4.2.87	RFT-V circuit	26
4.2.88	secure enclosure	26
4.2.89	skilled person	26
4.2.90	socket	26
4.2.91	special application cable	26
4.2.92	sub-duct	27
4.2.93	Telecommunications Functional Earth Electrode (TFEE)	27

	4.2.94	Telecommunications Labelling Instrument	27
	4.2.95	telecommunications network	27
	4.2.96	Telecommunications Outlet (TO)	27
	4.2.97	Telecommunications Reference Conductor (TRC)	28
	4.2.98	terminal equipment	28
	4.2.99	trunking	28
	4.2.100	underground cabling	28
	4.2.101	wall plate	28
	4.3	Abbreviations	29
5		REQUIREMENTS	31
	5.1	Safe and sound practice	31
	5.2	Manufacturer's instructions	31
	5.3	Compliance labelling	31
	5.4	Protection against damage	31
	5.5	Proper use	32
	5.5.1	<i>Fitness for purpose</i>	32
	5.5.2	<i>Other cabling Standards</i>	32
	5.6	Generic cabling and cabling linking distributors	32
	5.6.1	<i>Conductor size</i>	32
	5.6.2	<i>Cable temperature</i>	33
	5.7	ES3 generic and special application circuit cabling	33
	5.7.1	<i>ES3 generic circuits</i>	33
	5.7.2	<i>ES3 generic circuit warning markings</i>	34
	5.7.3	<i>ES3 special application circuits</i>	34
	5.7.3.1	<i>Cabling products</i>	34
	5.7.3.2	<i>Cabling installation</i>	34
	5.8	Cable with red sheath	34
	5.9	Plug-terminated cabling	35
	5.9.1	<i>Fixed or concealed cabling</i>	35
	5.9.2	<i>Connecting cords, patch cords and extension leads</i>	36
	5.9.3	<i>ES3 customer cabling</i>	36
	5.9.4	<i>Suitability of plug</i>	36
	5.10	Movable cabling	36
	5.10.1	<i>Requirements at each possible position</i>	36
	5.10.2	<i>Cable flexibility</i>	37
	5.10.3	<i>Strain</i>	37
	5.11	Cable joints	37
	5.11.1	<i>Jointing method</i>	37
	5.11.2	<i>Physical protection of the joint</i>	37

	5.12	Cable terminations	37
		5.12.1 Access to cable terminations	37
		5.12.2 Separation from other services	37
	5.13	Hazardous energy sources	37
	5.14	Interference to other circuits	38
	5.15	Alterations and additions	38
	5.16	Tampering or interference with a carrier facility	38
	5.17	Defective customer cabling or customer equipment not to be reconnected	38
6		HAZARDOUS CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH HV POWER	39
	6.1	Earth potential rise (EPR)	39
		6.1.1 General	39
		6.1.2 HV sites of particular concern	39
		6.1.3 Engineered installation	39
		6.1.4 Carrier notification	40
	6.2	Low frequency induction (LFI)	40
		6.2.1 General	40
		6.2.2 Engineered installation	40
		6.2.3 Carrier notification	40
7		HAZARDOUS AREAS AND DAMP LOCATIONS	41
	7.1	Hazardous areas (explosive atmosphere)	41
		7.1.1 Description	41
		7.1.2 Classification of hazardous areas	42
		7.1.3 Installation of customer cabling and equipment in hazardous areas	45
	7.2	Damp locations	48
		7.2.1 General	48
		7.2.2 Restricted zones	48
		7.2.3 Equipment installed in a restricted zone	49
8		CABLE SUPPORTS AND ENCLOSURES	51
	8.1	General	51
	8.2	Improper support of cabling	51
		8.2.1 Attachment to other services	51
		8.2.2 Suspended ceilings	51
	8.3	Conduit	51
		8.3.1 Prohibited conduit colours	51
		8.3.2 Access to conduit of a prohibited colour	53
		8.3.3 Sharing of conduit with a hazardous service	53
	8.4	Earthing of cable support systems and cable enclosures	54

	8.5	Separation from other services	54
	8.6	Removal of sharp edges	54
	8.7	Fire detection and fire alarm system cables	54
9		SEPARATION OF SERVICES – GENERAL	55
	9.1	Separation from LV power or HV circuits	55
	9.1.1	<i>Separation from LV or HV cables</i>	55
	9.1.2	<i>Separation from LV power terminations</i>	55
	9.1.3	<i>Separation from HV circuit terminations</i>	56
	9.2	Separation from services other than LV power or HV circuits	56
	9.2.1	<i>General</i>	56
	9.2.2	<i>Separation from non-electrical hazardous services</i>	57
	9.3	Separation of ES1, ES2 and ES3	59
	9.3.1	<i>Sharing of cable</i>	59
	9.3.2	<i>ES3 circuit terminations</i>	59
	9.3.3	<i>ES3 circuits</i>	59
	9.3.4	<i>Separation of ES1 and ES2 terminations</i>	59
	9.4	Separation from lightning down-conductors	59
	9.5	Steel wire armoured (SWA) cables	60
10		SURGE SUPPRESSION	61
	10.1	Assessment of the need for surge suppression	61
	10.2	Installation of surge suppression where required	61
	10.3	Surge suppression device	61
	10.4	Earthing of the surge suppression device	62
11		OPTICAL FIBRE AND COAXIAL CABLE SYSTEMS	63
	11.1	Optical fibre systems	63
	11.1.1	<i>General exemption from separation requirements</i>	63
	11.1.2	<i>Inspection and cleaning</i>	63
	11.1.3	<i>Inspecting apparatus</i>	63
	11.1.4	<i>Safety of the installation</i>	63
	11.1.5	<i>Labelling of fibre optic panels and enclosures</i>	64
	11.1.6	<i>Unused optical fibre connectors and adaptors</i>	65
	11.2	Coaxial cable systems	65
12		DISTRIBUTORS	66
	12.1	General	66
	12.2	Cross-connections	66
	12.3	Records	66
	12.3.1	<i>General</i>	66
	12.3.2	<i>Identification of ES3 circuits</i>	66
	12.4	Outdoor installation	66

	12.5	Enclosure construction	67
13		MAIN DISTRIBUTION FRAME (MDF)	68
	13.1	Application	68
	13.2	General	68
	13.3	Location	68
	13.4	Prohibited locations	69
	13.5	Security	69
	13.6	Access clearances	69
		<i>13.6.1 General</i>	<i>69</i>
		<i>13.6.2 Building structure, contents, fittings and fixtures</i>	<i>70</i>
		<i>13.6.3 Fixed electrical switchboard or meter panel</i>	<i>70</i>
	13.7	Height	70
		<i>13.7.1 Highest terminal or socket</i>	<i>70</i>
		<i>13.7.2 Lowest terminal or socket</i>	<i>70</i>
	13.8	Exit from the MDF room	70
	13.9	Illumination	71
	13.10	Inbuilt MDF compartment	71
	13.11	Carriers' terminations	71
	13.12	Marking	71
	13.13	Cross-connections	72
		<i>13.13.1 Connection on the carrier side of the MDF</i>	<i>72</i>
		<i>13.13.2 Connection on the customer side of the MDF</i>	<i>72</i>
		<i>13.13.3 Removal of 'dead' jumpers</i>	<i>72</i>
		<i>13.13.4 Miscellaneous</i>	<i>72</i>
14		NETWORK TERMINATION DEVICE (NTD)	73
	14.1	Application	73
	14.2	Connection on the customer side of the NTD	73
	14.3	Connection on the carrier side of the NTD	73
	14.4	Testing	73
15		TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLETS	75
	15.1	Socket types	75
	15.2	Protection against contact with live parts of sockets	75
		<i>15.2.1 Access to ES3 circuits</i>	<i>75</i>
		<i>15.2.2 Premises frequented by small children</i>	<i>75</i>
	15.3	Damp locations	75
		<i>15.3.1 Restricted zones</i>	<i>75</i>
		<i>15.3.2 Outside restricted zones</i>	<i>76</i>
	15.4	First socket	76
		<i>15.4.1 Application</i>	<i>76</i>

	15.4.2	Connection of customer cabling	76
	15.5	Movable TOs	77
	15.5.1	Installation arrangements for movable TOs	77
	15.5.2	Enclosures for movable TOs	77
	15.5.3	Mechanical connectivity	77
	15.6	Pendant TOs	77
	15.6.1	Suspension arrangements for pendant TOs	77
	15.6.2	Cable terminating on a pendant TO	78
16	INDOOR CABLING		79
	16.1	Cable flammability	79
	16.2	Fire stopping	79
	16.2.1	General	79
	16.2.2	Materials	79
	16.3	Separation from LV power cables	80
	16.3.1	General	80
	16.3.2	Cabling in building framework	80
	16.3.3	Cables in common trunking or a common duct or enclosure	81
	16.3.4	Undercarpet cabling	81
	16.4	Separation from HV circuits	81
	16.4.1	Single-core cables	81
	16.4.2	Multi-core cables	81
	16.5	Prohibited use of flame-propagating conduit	82
	16.6	Cabling in lift and hoist shafts and for travelling cranes	82
	16.6.1	Permanently fixed cables	82
	16.6.2	Travelling cables	83
	16.7	Cabling over or under floor covering	83
	16.7.1	Physical protection	83
	16.7.2	Separation from power cabling	83
	16.8	Cables in floor conduit or duct	83
17	OUTDOOR CABLING – GENERAL		84
	17.1	Protection rating	84
	17.2	Cabling between premises	84
	17.3	Cabling between buildings	84
	17.3.1	General	84
	17.3.2	Coaxial cabling	85
	17.3.3	Paired conductors	85
	17.3.4	Inter-building cabling within a sheltered structure	86
	17.4	Exposure to UV radiation (sunlight)	86

	17.5	Outdoor surface cabling	86
	17.6	Outdoor antennas	86
18		UNDERGROUND CABLING	88
	18.1	Pits and access holes	88
		18.1.1 Identification and marking	88
		18.1.2 Areas intended to be used by vehicles	88
		18.1.3 Heavy loads	88
		18.1.4 Conduit and cable entry to pits or access holes	88
		18.1.5 Sharing with LV or HV power	90
		18.1.6 HV sites	91
		18.1.7 Information about pit covers and access hole covers	91
	18.2	Pillars and cabinets	91
		18.2.1 Locking in public areas	91
		18.2.2 HV sites	91
	18.3	Conduit and marking tape	91
		18.3.1 Public footways and roadways	91
		18.3.2 Marking tape	92
		18.3.3 Other locations	92
		18.3.4 Conduit compliance	92
		18.3.5 Sub-ducting of customer cable in enveloper conduit or pipe	92
		18.3.6 Conduit integrity	93
	18.4	Cable compliance	94
	18.5	Blown fibre tube systems or similar	95
	18.6	Depth of cover	95
		18.6.1 Public footways or roadways	95
		18.6.2 Places other than public footways or roadways	96
	18.7	Crossing another service	96
		18.7.1 General	96
		18.7.2 Crossing with LV or HV power	97
	18.8	Separate trench ('exclusive trench')	97
		18.8.1 General	97
		18.8.2 Parallel run with LV or HV power	97
	18.9	Shared trench with another service	97
		18.9.1 General	97
		18.9.2 Shared trench with LV or HV power	98
	18.10	Low frequency induction (LFI)	98
	18.11	Exclusion zones	98
19		AERIAL CABLING	100

19.1	Poles and support structures	100
	19.1.1 <i>General</i>	100
	19.1.2 <i>Separation of poles and structures from aerial power lines</i>	100
19.2	Ground clearance	100
19.3	Cable compliance	101
	19.3.1 <i>UV resistance</i>	101
	19.3.2 <i>Integral bearer cable</i>	101
19.4	Fastening of catenary supports or bearers	101
19.5	Crossings and shared poles (joint use) with aerial power lines	101
	19.5.1 <i>General</i>	101
	19.5.2 <i>Permission of the owner of the poles</i>	102
	19.5.3 <i>Attachment to poles or structures carrying HV Power lines of 66 kV or higher</i>	102
	19.5.4 <i>Attachment to poles or structures carrying HV power lines less than 66 kV</i>	102
	19.5.5 <i>Attachment to a pole or structure carrying an HV power transformer</i>	102
	19.5.6 <i>Crossing aerial HV power lines exceeding 330 kV</i>	102
	19.5.7 <i>Relative position of aerial customer cabling and aerial power lines</i>	103
	19.5.8 <i>Cable</i>	104
	19.5.9 <i>Joints or terminations</i>	104
	19.5.10 <i>Power earthing conductors</i>	104
19.6	Separation from other telecommunications cabling	104
19.7	Cabling across watercourses	105
19.8	Exclusion zones	105
20	TELECOMMUNICATIONS EARTHING AND POWER DISTRIBUTION	107
20.1	Application	107
20.2	Earthing systems, general description	107
	20.2.1 <i>Communications Earth System</i>	107
	20.2.2 <i>Telecommunications Reference Conductor</i>	107
	20.2.3 <i>ELV DC power supply system</i>	107
	20.2.4 <i>DC earth return circuit</i>	107
20.3	Compliance labelling	107
20.4	Voltage and current limiting	108
20.5	EPR hazard zones	108
20.6	Functional earth requirement	108
20.7	Protective earth requirement	109
20.8	Earthing and bonding conductors	109

20.8.1	Conductor type	109
20.8.2	Multi-pair cable	110
20.8.3	Conductor size	110
20.8.4	Connection or jointing/coupling of conductors	110
20.9	Earthing or bonding bars and terminals	110
20.9.1	Capacity	110
20.9.2	Earthing or bonding conductor connection	110
20.9.3	Access to earthing/bonding bars or terminals	111
20.10	Earthing and bonding conductor joints and couplings	111
20.10.1	Jointing/Coupling method	111
20.10.2	Insulation of the joint/coupling	112
20.10.3	Environmental protection of the joint/coupling	112
20.11	Equipotential bonding	112
20.11.1	General	112
20.11.2	Communications bonding conductor	112
20.11.3	Communications Earth Terminal (CET)	113
20.11.4	Connection to the electrical earthing system	114
20.12	Communications Earth System (CES)	114
20.12.1	Description of the CES	114
20.12.2	CES conductors	114
20.12.3	Equipotential bonding of the CES	115
20.12.4	Resistance of the CES	115
20.13	Telecommunications Reference Conductor (TRC)	115
20.13.1	Description of the TRC distribution system	115
20.13.2	TRC system components	115
20.13.3	TRC to be exclusive to telecommunications services	116
20.13.4	Connection to an earth reference	116
20.13.5	TRC system conductors	116
20.13.6	Cabling method	117
20.13.7	TRC link bars	117
20.13.8	Telecommunications Functional Earth Electrode (TFEE)	117
20.13.9	Equipotential bonding of the TRC system	118
20.13.10	TRC in a separate building	119
20.13.11	Resistance of the TRC system	120
20.14	Interconnection of CES and TRC systems	120
20.15	ES3 DC power supply system	120
20.16	DC earth return circuit	121
20.16.1	Separation from other earthing systems	121
20.16.2	Earth electrode	121

	20.16.3 Conductor colour, size and labelling	121
20.17	Earthing of metallic barriers	122
	20.17.1 Prohibition — connection to TRC	122
	20.17.2 Earthing connection	122
	20.17.3 Earthing conductor colour and size	122
20.18	Earthing of cable shields and drain wires	122
	20.18.1 General	122
	20.18.2 Prohibition — connection to TRC	122
	20.18.3 Allowable earthing points	122
	20.18.4 Cabling between separate buildings or structures	123
20.19	Earthing of metallic supports, enclosures, frames, backmounts and steel wire armouring	123
	20.19.1 General	123
	20.19.2 Prohibition – connection to TRC	123
	20.19.3 Earthing connection	123
	20.19.4 Earthing conductor colour and size	124
20.20	Earthing at distributors terminating outdoor customer cabling	124
20.21	Earthing of surge suppression devices	124
	20.21.1 Surge suppression for the protection of ordinary persons	124
	20.21.2 Surge suppression for the protection of customer equipment	125
PARTICIPANTS		228
APPENDICES		
A	Restricted zones in damp locations (NORMATIVE)	133
B	Common cable colour codes (INFORMATIVE)	138
C	Telecommunications outlets (INFORMATIVE)	143
D	Recommended access clearances for MDFs and NTDs (INFORMATIVE)	147
E	Direct current in the communications bonding conductor (INFORMATIVE)	151
F	Power feeding in telecommunications networks (INFORMATIVE)	152
G	ES3 separation of telecommunications and electrical circuits (INFORMATIVE)	157
H	Hazards and Interference from HV power systems (INFORMATIVE)	159
I	The IP Code (INFORMATIVE)	171
J	The network boundary (INFORMATIVE)	173
K	Cabling Provider Rules (INFORMATIVE)	193
L	Guidance for domestic installations (INFORMATIVE)	196
M	Aerial cabling (INFORMATIVE)	197
N	Cabling between buildings (INFORMATIVE)	208

O	nbn Fibre to The Curb (Kerb) connectivity (INFORMATIVE)	220
P	AS/NZS 60950.1 and AS/NZS 62368.1 equivalence (NORMATIVE)	222
	BIBLIOGRAPHY	226

FIGURES

1	Arm's reach	11
2	Hazardous area for reticulated gas supply meters and regulators (domestic premises)	44
3	Hazardous area for heavier-than-air bottled gas (domestic premises)	44
4	Typical CES for commercial premises with distributed cabling	127
5	Earthing options for a small distributor installation (e.g. domestic or small business premises)	128
6	Typical TRC system for commercial premises with distributed cabling	129
7	Equipotential bonding of TRC to the electrical earthing system via a differential earth clamp (where excessive noise or direct current)	130
8	Installation of a TFEF where the electrical earth electrode is located at another building or structure	131
9	Connection of a metallic cable shield (or moisture barrier) of an underground or aerial customer cable at a building or structure	132
A1	Bath without a shower	134
A2	Bath with a shower and fixed partition	134
A3	Shower with a fixed partition	135
A4	Shower without a fixed partition	135
A5	Hand basin or fixed water container not exceeding 45 litres capacity per container	136
A6	Laundry tub or fixed water container exceeding 45 litres capacity	137
C1	8P modular socket contact numbering	144
C2	6P modular socket contact numbering	145
C3	600 series socket connections	146
D1	Installation zone for a wall mounted MDF or NTD on the external wall of a dwelling	147
D2	Access clearances for a wall mounted MDF or NTD	148
D3	Access clearances for a wall mounted MDF or NTD	149
D4	Access clearances for a floor mounted or 'island' MDF	150
H1	EPR caused by fault current at an HV transformer	161
H2	HV isolating links within a power generating station or HV substation	166
I1	Arrangement of the IP Code	171
J1	Analysis of section 22 of the <i>Telecommunications Act 1997</i>	176
J2	Network boundary for copper twisted pair telecommunications networks where a line connects to an MDF in the end-user's building	179
J3	Network boundary where a line connects to a network termination device (NTD)	180
J4	Network boundary where a line connects to the first socket after the building entry point	181
J5	Network boundary where the line connects to two or more sockets in a 'bus' configuration	181

J6	Network boundary for a legacy telephone installation (pre-1989) where the line connects to two or more sockets in a 'star' configuration	182
J7	Network boundary for a standard coaxial cable broadband internet installation	183
J8	Network boundary for optical fibre telecommunications network connecting to an MDF	183
J9	Network boundary for optical fibre telecommunications network connecting directly to CAE	184
J10	Network boundary for optical fibre telecommunications networks connecting to an NTD (FTTP model)	184
J11	Network boundary where an NTD precedes a distributor (e.g. FTTP or home networking)	185
J12	Network boundary where a TO precedes a distributor (e.g. home networking)	185
J13	Network boundary where an MDF or NTD precedes a TO socket	186
J14	Network boundary for service supplied to premises by terrestrial radio (e.g. rural/remote premises)	186
J15	Network boundary for service supplied directly to an external antenna on a building by terrestrial radio	187
J16	Network boundary for service supplied directly to a building by terrestrial radio	188
J17	Network boundary for service supplied to premises by satellite	189
J18	Precise location of the network boundary at an MDF	190
J19	Precise location of the network boundary at a network termination device	191
J20	Precise location of the network boundary at the first socket	192
M1	Minimum aerial customer cabling ground clearances required by this Standard	199
M2	Pictorial representation of the requirements of Clause 19.1.2.1 of this Standard	201
M3	Crossing above aerial power lines (cable suspended between tall buildings)	203
M4	In-span crossing below aerial power lines	204
M5	Attached crossing below aerial power lines	205
M6	Minimum clearances for shared poles	205
M7	Insulation of, and clearance from, any power earthing conductor on a shared pole	206
M8	Termination of an insulated bearer (small cables) on a shared pole	207
N1	An example of lightning-induced overvoltages which can develop voltage differences between the end-user environment and the telecommunications conductors	210
N2	An example of a protection system which reduces overvoltages	212
N3	Possible sources of overvoltages with cabling between two buildings	213
N4	Australian annual thunder-day map	215
N5	Assessment of the risk of injury due to lightning overvoltages	217
O1	Typical FTTC connection showing nbn NCD and DPU	220

TABLES

1	Prohibited conduit colours for customer cabling	52
2	Customer cabling — minimum separation requirements from other services in or on a building (informative)	58
3	Conduit curves, bends and distances between access points	93
4	Underground customer cabling separation from power cabling	99
5	Minimum separation of aerial customer cabling, including joint or termination enclosures and telecommunications poles or structures, from aerial power lines and fittings	105
6	Resistance vs. length for standard copper earthing conductors	113
7	Minimum conductor sizes for earthing or bonding	126
B1	2-pair (quad) and 3-pair telephone cable colour code	138
B2	4-pair cable colour code	138
B3	Colour code for up to 100-pair cables (20-pair units)	139
B4	Colour code for up to 100-pair cables (25-pair units)	140
B5	Colour code for up to 100-pair cables (10-pair units)	141
B6	Colour code for up to 200-pair cables (10-pair units)	141
B7	Optical fibre colour code	142
C1	8P socket contact/pair assignments and cable colour code	144
C2	6P socket contact/pair assignments and cable colour code	145
C3	600 series socket contact/pair assignments and cable colour code	146
G1	Minimum separation distances required between different types of telecommunications and power services for safety (indoor cabling)	158
H1	Typical EPR hazard zones associated with HV power poles and towers	162
H2	Typical EPR hazard zones associated with power generating stations, transmission substations, zone substations, padmounts and transformers	164
H3	Minimum separation from parallel HV power line to avoid an electrostatic coupling hazard	170
I1	Summary of the IP Code	172
J1	Summary of network boundaries using fibre, HFC and wireless terminations	178
N1	Resistivity values for various materials	216

1 INTERPRETATIVE GUIDELINES

1.1 Categories of requirements

This Standard contains normative and informative elements. Normative elements (mandatory requirements) are indicated by the words '**shall**' or '**shall not**'.

All other elements are informative.

1.2 Definitions, expressions and terms

If there is any conflict between the definitions used in this Standard and the definitions used in the *Telecommunications Act 1997*, the definitions in the *Act* take precedence.

1.3 Notes

Text denoted as 'Note' is for guidance in interpretation and is shown in smaller size type.

1.4 Units and symbols

In this Standard the International System (SI) of units and symbols is used in accordance with ISO 80000-1.

1.5 Referenced safety standards transitional matters

The AS/NZS 62368.1 equipment safety Standard was published on 15 February 2018 as a replacement for AS/NZS 60950.1. The AS/CA S009 Standard has been revised to use the terminology and requirements of AS/NZS 62368.1.

The requirements and terminology of either the AS/NZS 60950.1 or AS/NZS 62368.1 safety Standards may be used, where reference is made in AS/CA S009 to the AS/NZS 62368.1 requirements or terminology, for a transitional period of four years from the date of publication of AS/NZS 62368.1.

From 15 February 2022, the AS/NZS 60950.1 requirements are not be substituted for the AS/NZS 62368.1 requirements and terminology used in this Standard.

There are several terms from AS/NZS 60950.1 which are no longer used in AS/NZS 62368.1, which introduces new or revised terms. To aid with the transition process in AS/CA S009, attention is drawn to Appendix P, which specifies how equivalence between the two referenced safety Standards is implemented. The term and definition for ELV is an exception, since AS/CA S009 uses the term with respect to electrical building wiring in accordance with AS/NZS 3000, even though AS/NZS 62368.1 no longer uses that term.

1.6 Referenced publications

The list of references in Section 3 is of publications referenced in mandatory requirements of this Standard.

The bibliography contains information about other publications referred to in this Standard e.g. publications only referred to in notes and informative appendices.

2 SCOPE AND GENERAL

2.1 Scope

This Standard applies to the installation and maintenance of fixed or concealed Cabling or equipment that is Connected, or is intended to be Connected, to a Telecommunications Network, including any Cord or Cordage, or that part of any Cord or Cordage, that is Connected as fixed or concealed Cabling.

This Standard does not apply to—

- (a) any electrical power Cabling whose primary function is the distribution of AC Mains supply, and which is connected to an AC Mains supply, but which may also carry telecommunications signals as a secondary function as long as the telecommunications signals originate from the power network or are injected into the power Cabling via an appropriate interface device;
- (b) any Cabling used for the connection or distribution of broadcasting services, as defined in the *Broadcasting Services Act 1992*, that are supplied to the End-User by means of transmission through free air to a receiving radio, television or satellite antenna whether or not such Cabling is Connected to receiving equipment that is Connected to a Carrier's or Carriage Service Provider's Telecommunications Network (e.g. via an Ethernet Port); and
- (c) any Cabling on the Carrier's side of the Network Boundary whether or not such Cabling is located in Customer Premises, e.g. Lead-In Cabling.

Note 1: Cabling described in Item (a) is subject to AS/NZS 3000.

Note 2: The interface device described in (a) is subject to AS/NZS 62368.1.

Note 3: Cabling described in Item (b) is effectively exempted from technical regulation under the *Telecommunications Act 1997* and is therefore out of the scope of AS/CA S009.

Note 4: Cabling described in Item (c) is effectively exempted from technical regulation under the *Telecommunications Act 1997* and is therefore out of the scope of AS/CA S009.

2.2 Objective

The basic objective of this Standard is to—

- (a) protect the health and safety of any person who may—
 - (i) operate;
 - (ii) work on;
 - (iii) use services supplied by means of; or

(iv) be otherwise reasonably likely to be affected by the operation of;

a Telecommunications Network or a Facility; and

(b) protect the integrity (proper end-to-end functioning) of a Telecommunications Network or a Facility.

Note: A Carrier may disconnect Customer Equipment or Customer Cabling that is, or is likely to be, a threat to the health or safety of any person or the integrity of a Telecommunications Network or a Facility.

2.3 Date of effect

This Standard comes into effect on publication, with AS/CA S009:2013 continuing to have effect for up to eighteen months after publication of this Standard.

Note: Coming into effect on publication allows for immediate use of the content in this Standard, while the eighteen month transition period from the previous version allows time for updates to supporting arrangements, e.g. updates to training programs, the training of cablers, etc.

2.4 Limitations

The requirements in this Standard are generally limited to—

- (a) protecting the health and safety of persons; and
- (b) protecting the integrity of a Telecommunications Network or a Facility.

However, additional information is provided for guidance.

2.5 Basic aims

This Standard covers design and construction practice sufficient to ensure that—

- (a) the installation or normal use of the Cabling does not expose Carrier personnel, Cabling Providers, Customers, or other persons to any danger; and
- (b) the installation or normal use of the Cabling does not adversely affect the integrity (proper end-to-end functioning) of a Telecommunications Network.

2.6 Safety of the installation

The Cabling Provider should ensure that—

- (a) Ordinary Persons are safeguarded from contact with any electrical energy source other than ES1 and from any exposure to hazardous laser radiation;

- (b) Cabling Providers are safeguarded from accidental personal electrical contact with ES3 circuits, LV Power and HV circuits or accidental exposure to hazardous laser radiation;
- (c) Cabling Providers who are required to access, install or maintain ES3 circuits, are safeguarded from accidental personal electrical contact with LV Power and HV circuits;
- (d) licensed electrical workers are safeguarded from accidental personal electrical contact with any telecommunications circuits or accidental exposure to hazardous laser radiation;
- (e) the creation of any general safety hazard is avoided e.g. tripping, falling or bodily impact with a protruding object; and
- (f) any manufacturer warning or instruction label is not damaged or obscured during installation.

Note 1: Contact with ES1 circuits by Ordinary Persons should be prevented where practicable.

Note 2: Provision is made in this Standard for Cabling Providers who are Skilled Persons and instructed, suitably qualified or licensed to access ES3 circuits, LV Power or HV Power.

2.7 Network integrity

To ensure electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) and interoperability of the Customer Cabling with Telecommunications Networks, and to minimise the risk of crosstalk and other adverse influences between telecommunications circuits, in addition to the requirements of this Standard Customer Cabling should be installed as per Clause 5.5.2.

2.8 Other industry standards or codes

In addition to the mandatory requirements of this Standard, the Cabling Provider may need to meet the requirements of other standards or codes for the installation or repair of certain types of Customer Cabling including, but not limited to, the following categories:

- (a) Fire detection and alarm systems.
- (b) Lifts, escalators and moving walks.
- (c) Intruder alarm systems.
- (d) Building control and automation systems.

Note: Although compliance with the Standards applicable to Items (a) to (d) is not a requirement of this Standard, regulatory authorities may require compliance and may have additional requirements of national Building Codes.

2.9 Topics

In achievement of its basic aims, this Standard addresses the following matters:

- (a) Connection of the installation to the Telecommunications Network (Network Boundary).
- (b) Protection of the installation from foreseeable physical damage (e.g. impact, weathering, corrosion) or interference from other circuits (e.g. crosstalk, noise).
- (c) Mitigation against the effects of Earth Potential Rise and Low Frequency Induction.
- (d) Protection of Ordinary Persons from exposure to Electrical Energy Sources class 2 (ES2) and class 3 (ES3), radiation hazards or the ingress of dangerous fluids or gases to the Building.
- (e) Prevention of injury to any person due to the improper installation of such things as catenary supports, pits, access holes or Enclosures.
- (f) Installation of Cabling in Hazardous Areas (explosive atmospheres).
- (g) Protection of Carrier personnel, Cabling Providers and other workers from exposure to site hazards or contact with Hazardous Services.
- (h) Prevention of fire caused by improper installation or use of Cabling.
- (i) Identification of Lines and services to minimise the risk of accidental interference, improper use or disconnection of Telecommunications Network services.
- (j) Protection of persons from exposure to earthed Cables, equipment or objects (including ground) that may be at a different electric potential.
- (k) Protection of Ordinary Persons from overvoltages caused by atmospheric discharges (e.g. lightning) or power system faults.
- (l) Prevention of damage to the earthing system of the electrical installation due to electrolytic corrosion caused by DC currents in the telecommunications earthing system.

Note: This Standard should be read in conjunction with AS/CA S008 which specifies the requirements for Cabling Products intended for connection to the Customer side of the boundary of a Telecommunications Network.

3 REFERENCES

For dated references, only the edition cited applies. However, parties to agreements based on this Standard are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the normative documents indicated below.

For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

The list of references below is of publications in mandatory requirements of this Standard.

The bibliography contains information about other publications referred to in this Standard e.g. publications only referred to in notes and informative appendices.

Publication	Title
Australian Standards	
AS/NZS 11801.1	Information technology - Generic cabling for customer premises Part 1: General requirements
AS 1735.2-2001	Lifts, escalators and moving walks – Passenger and goods lifts – Electric
AS/NZS 1768	Lightning protection
AS/NZS 2053.1:2001 (R2016)	Conduits and fittings for electrical installations – General requirements
AS/NZS 2648.1:1995	Underground marking tape - Non-detectable tape
AS/NZS 3000:2018	Electrical installations (known as the Australian/New Zealand Wiring Rules)
AS/NZS 3835	Earth potential rise - Protection of telecommunications network users, personnel and plant
AS/NZS 3835.1:2006	Code of practice
AS/NZS 3835.2:2006	Application guide
AS/NZS 4117:1999	Surge protective devices for telecommunication applications
AS 4262	Telecommunication overvoltages
AS 4262.1	Part 1: Protection of persons
AS 4262.2	Part 2: Protection of equipment
AS 60529-2004	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)
AS/NZS IEC 60825	Safety of laser products
AS/NZS IEC 60825.1:2014	Part 1: Equipment classification and requirements
AS/NZS IEC 60825.2:2011	Part 2: Safety of optical fibre communication systems (OFCS)

Publication	Title
AS/NZS 60079.14:2009	Explosive atmospheres - Electrical installations design, selection and erection
AS/NZS 60950	Information technology equipment
AS/NZS 60950.1:2015	Part 1: Safety General requirements
AS/NZS 62368.1	Audio/video, information and communication technology equipment – Part 1: Safety requirements
Communications Alliance Standards	
AS/CA S008:2020	Requirements for customer cabling products
AS/CA S043	Requirements for Customer Equipment for connection to a metallic local loop interface of a Telecommunications Network
AS/CA S043.1:2015	Part 1: General
AS/CA S043.2:2016	Part 2: Broadband
AS/CA S043.3:2015	Part 3: DC, low frequency AC and voiceband
International Standards	
ISO 80000 1:2009	Quantities and Units – Part 1: General
ISO/IEC 11801-1	Information technology - Generic cabling for customer premises Part 1: General requirements
Other references	
HB 101–1997 (CJC 5)	Coordination of power and telecommunications – Low Frequency Induction (LFI): Code of practice for the mitigation of hazardous voltages induced into telecommunications lines
HB 102–1997 (CJC 6)	Coordination of power and telecommunications – Low Frequency Induction (LFI) Note: Application Guide to the LFI Code

4 DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

For the purposes of this document, the following terms and definitions apply.

If there is any conflict between the definitions used in this document and the definitions used in the *Telecommunications Act 1997 (the Act)*, the Act takes precedence.

4.1 Definitions by classification

The following tables provide a quick reference to the alphabetical listing of some terms and definitions in Clause 4.2 as used in this Standard.

4.1.1 Cable / cabling

by type/function	
4.2.7	cable
4.2.9	cabling
4.2.51	generic cabling
4.2.61	lead-in cabling
4.2.69	movable cabling
4.2.91	special application cable
by location	
4.2.1	aerial cabling
4.2.57	indoor cabling
4.2.73	outdoor cabling
4.2.100	underground cabling

4.1.2 Energy source / voltage classifications

4.2.36	Earth Potential Rise (EPR)
4.2.42	Electrical energy source class 1 (ES1)
4.2.43	Electrical energy source class 2 (ES2)
4.2.44	Electrical energy source class 3 (ES3)
4.2.54	High Voltage (HV)
4.2.55	HV power
4.2.65	Low Voltage (LV)
4.2.66	LV power
4.2.78	power feeding
Former terms used in AS/NZS 60950.1	
Appendix P	Extra-low voltage (ELV)
	Hazardous voltage
	Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV)
	Telecommunications network voltage (TNV)

4.1.3 Persons

AS/NZS 62368.1-related terms	
4.2.59	instructed person
4.2.72	ordinary person
4.2.89	skilled person
regulatory-related terms	
4.2.15	carriage service provider
4.2.39	end-user

4.1.4 Service/circuit classifications

4.2.45	ES3 generic circuit
4.2.46	ES3 special application circuit
4.2.53	hazardous service
4.2.85	RFT circuit
4.2.86	RFT-C circuit
4.2.87	RFT-V circuit
Former term used in AS/NZS 60950.1	
Appendix F	LV telecommunications circuit

4.2 Definitions

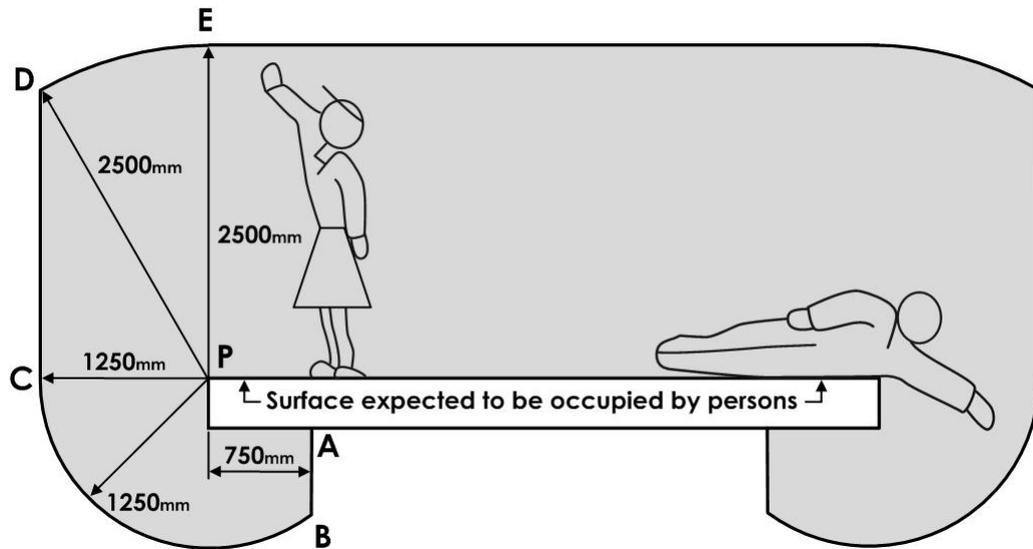
4.2.1 aerial cabling

Cabling that is suspended between poles, Buildings or other supporting structures external to a Building.

Note: Cabling that is supported along its length by a fixed, solid support such as a beam or girder between Buildings is treated as outdoor surface Cabling.

4.2.2 arm's reach

a zone extending from any point on a surface where persons usually stand or move about, to the limits that a person can reach with the hand in any direction without assistance (e.g. tools or ladder), as consistent with Figure 1.



Note 1: The grey area shows the zone into which a sample person can reach an arm from the surface shown if there are no permanent obstructions such as walls or balustrading. The zone reduces if a permanent obstruction prevents access. If an obstruction has an opening in it, the access through the opening is to be taken into account when assessing the zone.

Note 2: The zone of arm's reach extends in three dimensions.

Note 3: Points A to E and P are labelled for reference.

Note 4: DPE is a sector of a circle with centre P. Angle DPE is 30 degrees. BPC is a sector of a semicircle with centre P.

Figure 1
Arm's reach

4.2.3 bearer

a wire or strength member that is moulded or bound to the sheath of an aerial Cable to provide mechanical support for the Cable when suspended between two points.

Note: The Bearer may also be known as a 'messenger'.

4.2.4 building

Building includes a structure, a caravan and a mobile home.

Note: A structure includes any substantial construction intended to protect persons, animals, vehicles, machinery, tools or equipment from the weather but does not include such things as—

- (a) a pole, tower, mast, antenna, fence, retaining wall; or
- (b) any freestanding Enclosure with a total enclosed volume less than 0.4 cubic metres.

- 4.2.5 building code
the National Construction Code - Volumes One and Two (Building Code of Australia), as varied and enacted in the relevant State or Territory.
- 4.2.6 building entry point
a point at which a Line that is used to provide a Carriage Service to an End-User in a Building meets the outer surface of that Building, immediately before entering the Building.
[*Telecommunications Act 1997*]
- 4.2.7 cable
an assembly of one or more conductors and/or optical fibres, with a protective covering and possibly filling, insulating and protective material.

Note: The assembly may also include other elements, for example a metallic shield, a moisture barrier, a strength member or Bearer.

[Source: Adapted from IEC 151-12-38]
- 4.2.8 cable lug
a Cable terminal designed to be fastened to the connection point by a threaded screw, bolt or nut and which can only be disconnected by complete removal of the threaded screw, bolt or nut, as applicable.
- 4.2.9 cabling
Cable or Cables and any associated works or parts, e.g. pits, poles, Conduits, trays, connecting devices, Jumpers.
- 4.2.10 cabling product
a passive device (including any Cable, connecting hardware, Enclosure, Conduit or factory-made pit or factory-made access hole) that is intended for use on the Customer side of the boundary of a Telecommunications Network.
- 4.2.11 cabling provider
a Skilled Person or Instructed Person who performs Cabling Work.
- 4.2.12 Cabling Provider Rules
the *Telecommunications Cabling Provider Rules 2014*, as amended from time to time.
- 4.2.13 cabling work
(a) the installation of Customer Cabling for connection to a Telecommunications Network or to a Facility; or

(b) the connection of Customer Cabling to a Telecommunications Network or to a Facility; or

- (c) the maintenance of Customer Cabling Connected to a Telecommunications Network or to a Facility.

[*Telecommunications Act 1997*]

Note: The installation of Cord or Cordage as fixed or concealed Cabling is Cabling Work and is subject to the requirements of this Standard. Refer to Clause 1.1.

4.2.14 carriage service

a service for carrying communications by means of guided and/or unguided electromagnetic energy. [*Telecommunications Act 1997*]

4.2.15 carriage service provider

a person who supplies, or proposes to supply, a listed Carriage Service to the public using—

- (a) a network unit owned by one or more Carriers; or
- (b) a network unit in relation to which a nominated Carrier declaration is in force.

[*Telecommunications Act 1997*]

4.2.16 carrier

the holder of a carrier licence. [*Telecommunications Act 1997*]

4.2.17 catenary support system

a suspension system, typically a wire rope, between two points to provide support for one or more Cables or Conduits.

4.2.18 Communications Earth System (CES)

a system of earthing using common elements to provide for earthing of electrical and communications equipment within a Premises.

Note: A CES may be used for protective and functional earthing for telecommunications purposes.

4.2.19 Communications Earth Terminal (CET)

a terminal provided for the purpose of Equipotential Bonding of the Communications Earth System (CES) or the Telecommunications Reference Conductor (TRC) to the main earthing bar, main earthing conductor or sub-main earthing conductor of the electrical installation.

Note: The CET provides a demarcation between the electrical earthing system and the telecommunications earthing system and was formerly known as a 'bonding terminal'.

- 4.2.20 conductive pole or structure
a pole or structure that has a low electrical resistance.
Note: Any metallic, reinforced concrete or fibre-cement pole or structure is deemed to be conductive.
- 4.2.21 conduit
a tube or pipe that physically accommodates Cables.
Note: In this Standard, Conduit and pipe have the same meaning (see also Duct and Trunking).
- 4.2.22 connected
in relation to—
(a) a Telecommunications Network; or
(b) a Facility; or
(c) Customer Cabling; or
(d) Customer Equipment;
includes connection otherwise than by means of physical contact, for example, a connection by means of radiocommunication.
[Telecommunications Act 1997]
- 4.2.23 cord
a flexible Cable with a minimum of one termination (e.g. on a Plug).
Note: Cords are used for connection of movable Customer Equipment or to afford flexibility. Examples of Cords are Patch Cords, fly leads and pigtails.
- 4.2.24 cordage
a flexible Cable that is not fitted with connectors, which may be used in the assembly of Cords.
- 4.2.25 cross-connection
a method of providing for flexible interconnection of Cables or Cable elements, by means of Jumpers or Patch Cords.
- 4.2.26 customer
a legal person, including a natural person, a corporation or an organisation, that subscribes to (pays for) the supply of a Carriage Service.
- 4.2.27 Customer Access Equipment (CAE)
Customer Equipment with multiple Ports (local or network) that provides access (gateway functions) to a Telecommunications Network and is capable of switching, storage, processing, conversion, integration, Line isolation/coupling or multiplexing of

analogue or digital voice or voice equivalent communication.
[AS/CA S003]

Note 1: Examples of CAE include, but are not limited to, PABX or key systems, Line Isolation Devices, ISDN terminal adaptors, echo cancellers, interactive voice response systems, voice/packet gateways, integrated access devices and voice messaging systems.

Note 2: CAE is a type of Customer Equipment but, for the purposes of this Standard, is not considered to be Terminal Equipment. An operator console, telephone handset or any other peripheral device Connected to CAE that may be regularly handled by an Ordinary Person is Terminal Equipment.

Note 3: CAE was formerly referred to as a CSS (Customer switching system).

4.2.28 customer cable

a Cable that is used in Customer Cabling.

4.2.29 customer cabling

a Line that is used, installed ready for use or intended for use on the Customer side of the boundary of a Telecommunications Network.
[Telecommunications Act 1997]

4.2.30 customer equipment

(a) any equipment, apparatus, tower, mast, antenna or other structure or thing that is used, installed ready for use or intended for use on the Customer side of the boundary of a Telecommunications Network; or

(b) any system (whether software-based or otherwise) that is used, installed ready for use or intended for use on the Customer side of the boundary of a Telecommunications Network;

but not including a Line. [Telecommunications Act 1997]

Note: See also Terminal Equipment.

4.2.31 damp location

a location that is continuously or frequently exposed to splashing, spraying, hosing, ice, steam or water condensation but not including a location exposed to the weather.

Note 1: An example of a Damp Location may include, but is not limited to, a room or an area within a Building used for hosing down operations or containing a bath, shower, washing tub, washing basin, spa, swimming pool, sauna, urinal, fountain, water feature or refrigeration.

Note 2: A Damp Location does not include a domestic kitchen, a domestic WC, a building cavity (including any wall cavity, roof, ceiling space or underfloor space) or floor Duct.

4.2.32 designated distributor

a Distributor, near the main or first electrical switchboard in the Building, designated by the Cabling Provider as the most appropriate Distributor for distribution of a TRC system.

Note 1: The Designated Distributor may or may not be an MDF.

Note 2: The Designated Distributor was formerly called the 'nominated Distributor'.

4.2.33 differential earth clamp

a device that electrically connects two earthing systems under transient overvoltage conditions, but remains electrically disconnected under normal operating conditions.

Note: A Differential Earth Clamp may also be known as a potential equalisation clamp or PEC.

4.2.34 distributor

a collection of components used to terminate Cables which—

- (a) provides for Cross-Connection of Cables or Cable elements; and
- (b) excludes an assembly of Sockets used for connection, using Cords, of no more than six Telecommunications Outlet Cables to other Cables or equipment.

Note 1: Any Cable termination equipment used to connect two or more Cables or Cable elements together without Cross-Connection (e.g. a Cable joint) is not regarded as a Distributor for the purposes of this Standard.

Note 2: An assembly of Sockets that is not deemed to be a Distributor is to be treated as multiple Telecommunications Outlets for the purposes of this Standard.

4.2.35 duct

a closed passage for housing and protecting Cables and conductors.

Note 1: A Duct may consist of a Conduit, rectangular tubing or construction materials, e.g. a channel formed in concrete with a permanent concrete, metal or plastic covering.

Note 2: See also Conduit and Trunking.

4.2.36 Earth Potential Rise (EPR)

a rise in voltage of an earthing system and the surrounding soil with respect to a distant earth.

Note 1: EPR is caused primarily when an earth fault on an HV Power system produces a current flow through the earthing system of an HV Site.

Note 2: See Appendix H for more information about EPR.

- 4.2.37 electrically conductive element
any internal or external electrically conductive material associated with Cable, including, but not limited to, a metallic Cable pair, connector, shield, pair separator, Bearer, or metallic or carbon fibre strength member.
- 4.2.38 enclosure
a housing affording the type and degree of protection suitable for the intended application. [AS/NZS 62368.1]
- 4.2.39 end-user
the Customer or any other person that may use a Carriage Service, e.g. a family member or an employee of the Customer.

Note: An End-User is normally considered to be an Ordinary Person for the purposes of safety in this Standard.
- 4.2.40 EPR hazard zone
the area around an earthing system bounded by a contour joining all points of EPR equal to the maximum acceptable voltage below which no special precautions need to be taken to protect telecommunication services, Cabling Providers and Ordinary Persons.

Note: See Appendix H for more information.
- 4.2.41 equipotential bonding
electrical connections intended to bring exposed conductive parts or extraneous conductive parts to the same or approximately the same potential, but not intended to carry current in normal service. [AS/NZS 3000]

Note: In this Standard, the conductor used for Equipotential Bonding of a telecommunications earthing system to the electrical earthing system is called a 'communications bonding conductor' or 'Telecommunications Bonding Conductor'.
- 4.2.42 Electrical energy source class 1 (ES1)
See Appendix P.
- 4.2.43 Electrical energy source class 2 (ES2)
See Appendix P.
- 4.2.44 Electrical energy source class 3 (ES3)
See Appendix P.
- 4.2.45 ES3 generic circuit
a metallic circuit utilised for communications or Power Feeding, or both, that—

(a) exceeds the ES2 voltage and touch current limits;

- (b) does not exceed 400 V d.c. between conductors; and
- (c) does not exceed current as specified in AS/NZS 11801.1 or ISO/IEC 11801-1.

Note 1: Requirements for Generic Cabling supporting currents as specified in AS/NZS 11801.1 or ISO/IEC 11801-1, or voltages exceeding 400 V per pair are not specified in this Standard.

Note 2: At the time of publication, the current limit was 750 mA per conductor i.e. 1500 mA per pair. This value may change in future revision(s) of the AS/NZS 11801.1 or ISO/IEC 11801-1 Standards.

- 4.2.46 ES3 special application circuit
a circuit intended to support an ES3 service over a Special Application Cable.
- 4.2.47 facility
- (a) any part of the infrastructure of a Telecommunications Network; or
 - (b) any Line, equipment, apparatus, tower, mast, antenna, tunnel, Duct, hole, pit, pole or other structure or thing used, or for use, in or in connection with a Telecommunications Network.
[*Telecommunications Act 1997*]
- 4.2.48 fire compartment boundary element
a building element (e.g. a wall, floor, ceiling, roof, partition, column, beam, door or window) which forms part or all of a boundary of a fire compartment in a Building.
- 4.2.49 first socket
the Socket of a Telecommunications Outlet within a Customer's Building which terminates a Carrier's Lead-In Cabling, i.e. the Carrier's lead-in Cable does not terminate on an MDF or NTD.
- Note 1: The First Socket is a defined network boundary point. Refer to Appendix J for more information about the First Socket and the Network Boundary.
- Note 2: There may be more than one First Socket within a Building.
- 4.2.50 functional earth
earthing a point or points in a system or in an installation or in equipment, for purposes other than electrical safety.
[AS/NZS 62368.1]
- 4.2.51 generic cabling
is Cabling which meets the Cabling installation conformance requirements of a Cabling design document in the AS/NZS 11801 series or ISO/IEC 11801 series of Standards.

4.2.52 hazardous area (explosive atmosphere)

an area in which an explosive gas atmosphere or dust/air mixture is present, or may be expected to be present, in dangerous quantities so as to require special precautions for the selection, installation and use of Cabling and equipment. Explosive gas atmospheres include flammable vapours (from liquids).

Note 1: Hazardous Areas are classified in accordance with AS/NZS 60079.10.1 and AS/NZS 60079.10.2, or in accordance with industry-specific Standards or Codes (e.g. mines or Premises where explosives are processed or manufactured).

Note 2: The responsibility for classification of Hazardous Areas rests with the owner or occupant of the Premises.

4.2.53 hazardous service

a service that may cause injury to any person or permanent mechanical or electrical damage to telecommunications plant.

Note: Such services include, but are not limited to, the following—

- (a) a pipe containing corrosive or flammable liquid or gas, or any liquid or gas under high pressure;
- (b) a pipe of a temperature in excess of 60° C (this does not include a water pipe at a temperature below 60° C);
- (c) an LV or HV Power Cable or HV circuit;
- (d) a lightning down-conductor from an air termination;
- (e) a telecommunications Cable that is Connected to an ES3 energy source; and
- (f) an uninsulated HV-earth down conductor.

4.2.54 High Voltage (HV)

a voltage exceeding 1000 V a.c. or 1500 V d.c.

[Adapted from AS/NZS 3000]

4.2.55 HV power

an HV electrical equipment circuit used for the connection and distribution of an—

- (a) HV Mains supply;
- (b) HV micro-generation system;
- (c) HV traction system; or
- (d) HV DC system

in any combination of these, within a Building, structure, built environment or infrastructure.

Note: An example of HV Power is an 11 kV a.c. (or higher) Mains power Cable feeding a large commercial or multi-residential Building.

- 4.2.56 HV site
any part of an HV Power system where power system fault current may flow into the surrounding soil or local earthing system.
Note: Refer to Appendix H for more information about HV Power systems.
- 4.2.57 indoor cabling
Customer Cabling that is installed inside a Building but not underground or exposed to the elements.
Note: Cabling installed within a sheltered structure between Buildings, such as a service tunnel, covered walkway or above-ground Trunking system, is treated as Indoor Cabling for certain requirements of this Standard (e.g. Cable properties, separation from other services).
- 4.2.58 ICT network
A network carrying information, communications or telecommunications.
- 4.2.59 instructed person
a person instructed or supervised by a Skilled Person as to energy sources and who can responsibly use equipment safeguards and precautionary safeguards with respect to those energy sources.
Note: Supervised, as used in the definition, means having the direction and oversight of the performance of others.
[AS/NZS 62368.1]
- 4.2.60 jumper
a Cable unit or Cable element without connectors, typically one to four twisted pairs, either unsheathed or sheathed, used to make a Cross-Connection within a Distributor.
- 4.2.61 lead-in cabling
a Carrier's Telecommunications Network Cabling from the Carrier's distribution point to the Network Boundary.
- 4.2.62 line
a wire, Cable, optical fibre, tube, Conduit, waveguide or other physical medium used, or for use, as a continuous artificial guide for or in connection with carrying communications by means of guided electromagnetic energy. [Telecommunications Act 1997]
- 4.2.63 line isolation device
a device that electrically isolates each of the conductors of a telecommunications service from equipment to prevent the transfer of energy from an ES3 source but which allows the service to operate normally.

4.2.64 Low Frequency Induction (LFI)

the generation of currents in a telecommunications Line due to inductive coupling with a power line carrying large unbalanced currents, e.g. during a fault condition on an HV Power system.

Note: See Appendix H for more information about LFI.

4.2.65 Low Voltage (LV)

a voltage exceeding ELV limits (50 V a.c. or 120 V ripple-free d.c.), but not exceeding 1000 V a.c. or 1500 V d.c. [AS/NZS 3000]

4.2.66 LV power

an LV electrical equipment circuit used for the connection and distribution of an—

- (a) LV AC Mains supply;
- (b) LV micro-generation system; or
- (c) LV DC system;

in any combination of these, within a Building, structure, built environment or infrastructure.

Note: An example of LV Power is a 230 V a.c. Mains supply within a Building.

4.2.67 Main Distribution Frame (MDF)

a Distributor that provides, or is intended to provide, an electrical termination point for a Carrier's twisted pair Lead-In Cabling.

Note 1: The MDF is a defined network boundary point. Refer to Appendix J for more information about the MDF and the Network Boundary.

Note 2: There may be more than one MDF within a Building.

4.2.68 mains

an AC or DC power distribution system (external to the equipment) that supplies operating power to the equipment.

Note 1: Mains includes public or private utilities and equivalent sources such as motor-driven generators and uninterruptible power supplies.

[Source: Adapted from AS/NZS 62368.1]

4.2.69 movable cabling

a section of fixed or concealed Cabling which is likely to be moved as part of—

- (a) the use of the Cabling in a physically reasonable manner;
- (b) the use in a physically reasonable manner, or the normal automatic operation, of anything that the Cabling is fixed to, supported by or enclosed by;

- (c) an activity (other than Cabling Work or demolition of Cabling) which is—
 - (i) commonly carried out at; and
 - (ii) reasonable for;the type of location and type of Premises where the Cabling is installed; or
- (d) a particular type of activity (other than Cabling Work or demolition of Cabling) which has been made known to the Cabling Provider, either expressly or by implication, as likely to occur at the location where the Cabling is installed.

Note 1: 'Fixed' Cabling is fixed at least one point, so that it cannot readily be removed from a structure. Another section of the same run of Cabling may be movable.

Note 2: Item (a) usually relates to a person using a movable TO.

Note 3: Item (b) usually relates to Cabling which is attached to a movable part of fixed equipment.

Note 4: Installing Cabling at a Premises where it will obstruct the normal activities should be avoided, as such an installation may not comply with the general requirement of this Standard for Cabling to be installed in accordance with the principles of safe and sound practice.

Note 5: Loosely-installed or unsupported Cabling either in a building cavity, in rigid ducting or installed as Aerial Cabling would not typically be an example of Movable Cabling.

4.2.70 network boundary

the point which is deemed to be the boundary of a Carrier's Telecommunications Network for determining whether Cabling or equipment is Customer Cabling or Customer Equipment for the purpose of technical regulation under Part 21 of the *Telecommunications Act 1997* (the Act).

Note: Refer to Appendix J for more information about the Network Boundary.

4.2.71 Network Termination Device (NTD)

a device meeting the Carrier's requirements that is provided by the Carrier to establish a demarcation point between the Carrier's Telecommunications Network and Customer Cabling or Customer Equipment.

Note 1: An NTD is permanently marked at manufacture with the words 'Network Termination Device' or the letters 'NTD'. Any device that is not so marked is not an NTD.

Note 2: The NTD is a defined network boundary point. Refer to Appendix J for more information about the NTD and the Network Boundary.

- 4.2.72 ordinary person
a person who is neither a Skilled Person nor an Instructed Person.
[AS/NZS 62368.1]
Note: Examples of people assumed to be Ordinary Persons are End-Users and the general public.
- 4.2.73 outdoor cabling
Customer Cabling that is installed external to a Building, either underground or exposed to the elements.
Note: Cabling installed within a sheltered structure between Buildings, such as a service tunnel, covered walkway or above-ground Trunking system, is treated as Indoor Cabling for certain requirements of this Standard (e.g. Cable properties, separation from other services).
- 4.2.74 patch cord
a flexible Cable unit or Cable element with connector(s) typically used to establish connections on a Patch Panel.
- 4.2.75 patch panel
a Distributor designed to accommodate the use of Patch Cords.
Note 1: An assembly of no more than six Telecommunications Outlets (sockets) is not regarded as a Patch Panel (or a Distributor) for the purposes of this Standard. Refer to 4.2.34.
Note 2: An assembly of Sockets that is not deemed to be a Patch Panel is to be treated as multiple Telecommunications Outlets for the purposes of this Standard.
- 4.2.76 plug
a connecting device designed to be inserted in a mating Socket.
Note: Plugs are typically used on connecting Cords (otherwise known as 'Line Cords or 'fly leads') or Patch Cords.
- 4.2.77 port
a Socket, adaptor or terminal in equipment for the connection of Cabling or other equipment.
- 4.2.78 power feeding
the transfer of electrical power (usually DC) over a telecommunications Line for telecommunications purposes to operate a powered device.
Note: This includes standard telephones, Power over Ethernet (PoE) and remote powering of devices such as lights over telecommunications Cabling and IoT-networked devices.

4.2.79 premises

Premises includes—

- (a) land; and
- (b) one or more Buildings that are located in the same vicinity.

Note: The Premises may contain a Building or Buildings on a single parcel of land under a single title deed or on two or more parcels of land under a community title deed or separate title deeds.

4.2.80 protective earth

the earthing of a point in equipment or in a system of interconnected conductive parts which is necessary for safety purposes.

Note: A Protective Earth may be provided by any of the methods described in Clause 20.7.

4.2.81 protective earthing conductor

a conductor, other than a main earthing conductor, connecting any portion of the protective earthing system to the portion of the electrical installation or protective equipment required to be earthed, or to any other portion of the protective earthing system.

Note: A Protective Earthing Conductor is part of the protective earthing system and should be installed by a licensed electrical worker.

[Source: Adapted from AS/NZS 3000]

4.2.82 readily accessible

capable of being reached quickly and without climbing over or removing obstructions, or using a movable ladder, and in any case not more than 2.0 m above the ground, floor or platform.
[AS/NZS 3000]

4.2.83 registered engineer

an engineer who has formal recognition of the qualification and competency of an engineer in a particular field and is current on an engineer register. The engineer register may be—

- (a) a mandatory jurisdictional registration system for engineers (e.g. RPEQ), or
- (b) a National Engineering Register (e.g. NER), or
- (c) a Professional Engineering Registration Organisation (e.g. Engineers Australia).

Note 1: The minimum mandatory requirement for listing on a register is—

- (a) a qualification in a particular engineering discipline that complies with the requirements of the Washington Accord;

- (b) accumulated five years of relevant engineering industry experience over the past seven years; and
- (c) continuing professional development of 150 hours over the past three years.

Note 2: Further information can be found at Engineers Australia at www.engineersaustralia.org.au.

- 4.2.83.1 registered electrical engineer
a Registered Engineer in the electrical field.
- 4.2.83.2 registered ITEE (Information, Telecommunications and Electronic Engineering) engineer
a Registered Engineer in the ITEE field.
- 4.2.83.3 registered structural engineer
a Registered Engineer in the structural field.
- 4.2.84 restricted access area
an area accessible only to Skilled Persons and Instructed Persons with the proper authorisation.

[Source: AS/NZS 62368.1]
- 4.2.85 RFT circuit
an equipment circuit within the ICT Network not connected to Mains power, intended to supply or receive DC power at voltages exceeding the limits of ES2, and on which transient overvoltages or overcurrents may occur.

Note 1: Communication signalling is not required to be present on an RFT Circuit.

Note 2: Examples of RFT Circuits include—
- (a) for power transfer using voltages at ES1: USB, PoE, ISDN S0;
 - (b) for power transfer using voltages at ES2: analogue telephone during ringing, ISDN U;
 - (c) for power transfer using voltages at ES3: Power Feeding used by communications service providers; and
 - (d) utilities communication circuits such as line powered DSL equipment and G.fast).
- [Source: Adapted from IEC 62368-3]
- 4.2.86 RFT-C circuit
an RFT Circuit which is so designed and protected that under normal operating conditions and single fault conditions, the currents in the circuit do not exceed defined values.

Note 1: An RFT-C Circuit is an ES3 circuit.

Note 2: The limit values of current under normal operating conditions and single fault conditions are specified in IEC 62368-3.

Note 3: Transient overvoltages may occur on an RFT-C Circuit.

Note 4: Refer to Appendix F in this Standard for more information.

[Source: Adapted from IEC 62368-3]

4.2.87 RFT-V circuit

an RFT Circuit which is so designed and protected that under normal operating conditions and single fault conditions, the voltages are limited and the accessible area of contact is limited.

Note 1: An RFT-V Circuit is an ES3 circuit.

Note 2: The limit values of voltage under normal operating conditions and single fault conditions are specified in IEC 62368-3.

Note 3: Transient overcurrents may occur on an RFT-V Circuit.

Note 4: Refer to Appendix F in this Standard for more information.

[Source: Adapted from IEC 62368-3]

4.2.88 secure enclosure

an Enclosure where access to the contents can only be gained by opening or removing the Enclosure by means of a key or tool.

4.2.89 skilled person

a person with relevant education or experience to be able to identify hazards and to take appropriate actions to reduce the risks of injury to themselves and others [AS/NZS 62368.1]

4.2.90 socket

a connecting device designed to accept a mating Plug.

Note 1: Sockets are typically used in Telecommunications Outlets and Patch Panels for connection of equipment Cords or Patch Cords.

Note 2: A Socket is sometimes also described as a 'jack'.

4.2.91 special application cable

a Cable that—

- (a) is intended to carry steady-state or change-of-state DC signals or AC signals less than 300 Hz between devices;
- (b) is a Cable intended to carry an industrial data signalling protocol, e.g. RS232 or RS485;
- (c) is intended for multidiscipline use; or
- (d) is a hybrid Cable.

Note 1: A Special Application Cable may include, but is not limited to—

- (a) a communications Cable used for DC power transfer and associated status and alarm circuits;
- (b) a MIMS, EWIS or other fire detection or fire warning system Cable;
- (c) a security or control system Cable; or
- (d) a travelling lift or hoist Cable.

Note 2: IEC 62368-3 specifies requirements for circuits that are designed to transfer DC operating power from power sourcing equipment to a powered device through communication Cables or Ports.

4.2.92 sub-duct

a Conduit installed within a larger Conduit, Duct or Trunking.

Note: Sub-ducting is used to provide physical or electrical separation between a Cable installed within the Sub-Duct and any service installed within the larger Conduit, Duct or Trunking.

4.2.93 Telecommunications Functional Earth Electrode (TFEE)

an electrode that provides a connection to the general mass of earth for functional earthing of telecommunications equipment and Cabling.

4.2.94 Telecommunications Labelling Instrument

the *Telecommunications (Labelling Notice for Customer Equipment and Customer Cabling) Instrument 2018*, as amended from time to time, or a notice made in substitution for that Instrument.

4.2.95 telecommunications network

a system, or series of systems that is operated by a Carrier or Carriage Service Provider and which carries, or is capable of carrying, communications by means of guided and/or unguided electromagnetic energy. [*Telecommunications Act 1997 (MOD)*]

4.2.96 Telecommunications Outlet (TO)

a connecting device to which an Ordinary Person may connect Terminal Equipment to telecommunications Cabling, with the connecting device being either—

- (a) fixed; or
- (b) movable but permanently Connected to fixed Cabling.

Note 1: A Telecommunications Outlet typically comprises a Wall Plate, housing or other mounting device containing a Socket or Sockets.

Note 2: For the purposes of this Standard, a Telecommunications Outlet includes a device referred to as a 'broadcast outlet' (BO) or 'control outlet' (CO) in any other telecommunications Standard.

- 4.2.97 Telecommunications Reference Conductor (TRC)
a low noise earthing system providing a zero voltage reference point for telecommunications signalling and other functional purposes which may include equipment reliability.
- 4.2.98 terminal equipment
peripheral equipment operated by an Ordinary Person to access a telecommunications service.

Note 1: An example of Terminal Equipment is a telephone instrument, headset, modem, computer or other equipment that may be handled by an End-User.

Note 2: Terminal Equipment is a type of Customer Equipment. Equipment such as a Distributor or CAE is also Customer Equipment but is not Terminal Equipment.
- 4.2.99 trunking
a tray or trough system with removable cover(s) along its length for housing and protecting Cables.

Note: See also Conduit and Duct.
- 4.2.100 underground cabling
Cabling that is installed below ground level external to a Building.

Note: Cabling installed within an underground structure such as a service tunnel or mine is treated as Indoor Cabling for certain requirements of this Standard (e.g. Cable properties, separation from other services).
- 4.2.101 wall plate
a face plate normally used on a cavity wall or on a mounting block, to which one or more discrete telecommunications Sockets may be fitted for connection of Cords by Ordinary Persons.

4.3 Abbreviations

For the purposes of this document, the following abbreviated terms apply.

AC (or a.c.)	Alternating Current (in r.m.s. value unless stated otherwise)
ACIF	Australian Communications Industry Forum
ACMA	Australian Communications and Media Authority
AS	Australian Standard
CA	Communications Alliance
CAE	Customer Access Equipment
CES	Communications Earth System
CET	Communications Earth Terminal
DC (or d.c.)	Direct Current
ELV	Extra-Low Voltage
EPR	Earth Potential Rise
ES1	Electrical energy source class 1
ES2	Electrical energy source class 2
ES3	Electrical energy source class 3
EWIS	Emergency Warning and Intercommunication System
FTTP	Fibre To The Premises
HV	High Voltage
ICT	Information Communications and Telecommunications
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
IoT	Internet of Things
IP	International Protection (rating) — sometimes also referred to as 'ingress protection'
IPXn	rated for protection against ingress of water only
ISDN	Integrated Services Digital Network
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
ITU-T	International Telecommunication Union–Telecommunications Standardization Sector
LFI	Low Frequency Induction
LPG	Liquid Petroleum Gas
LV	Low Voltage
MDF	Main Distribution Frame
MIMS	Mineral Insulated Metal Sheath
NTD	Network Termination Device
NZS	New Zealand Standard
PABX	Private Automatic Branch eXchange
PVC	PolyVinyl Chloride
RFT	Remote feeding telecommunication circuit

RFT-C	Remote feeding telecommunication circuit – current limited
RFT-V	Remote feeding telecommunication circuit – voltage limited
SELV	Safety Extra-Low Voltage
SWA	Steel Wire Armouring
SWER	Single Wire Earth Return
TFEE	Telecommunications Functional Earth Electrode
TNV	Telecommunications Network Voltage
TO	Telecommunications Outlet
TRC	Telecommunications Reference Conductor
ULLS	Unconditioned Local Loop Service
UPVC	Unplasticised Poly Vinyl Chloride
UV	Ultraviolet (radiation/light), e.g. direct sunlight

5 REQUIREMENTS

5.1 Safe and sound practice

Customer Cabling **shall** be installed in accordance with principles of safe and sound practice.

Note: An example of practices that are not considered to be safe and sound are those that may, in due course, lead to the injury of a Cabling Provider or Ordinary Person, such as—

- (a) physical protrusions that a person may bump into or trip over (e.g. due to their location or low visibility);
- (b) non-compliance with another industry Standard or Code; or
- (c) the improper installation of a Cabling Product and associated equipment that makes it unfit for purpose.

5.2 Manufacturer's instructions

A Cabling Product installed for connection to a Carrier's Telecommunications Network **shall** be installed—

- (a) in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, including, in the case of Cable, such things as Cable bend radius, tension, manner of Cable fixing, colour code, etc.; and
- (b) in accordance with the instructions of the manufacturer or supplier of any equipment to which the Cabling Product Cable is to be Connected.

5.3 Compliance labelling

A Cabling Provider **shall not** install any Customer Cabling or Customer Equipment that is subject to a standard under the *Telecommunications Act 1997* unless it is labelled in accordance with the Telecommunications Labelling Instrument.

Note: Earthing and telecommunications power distribution components (e.g. earthing/power conductors, earthing bars, busbars, earthing/power terminals, line tap devices, earth electrodes and associated fittings, batteries, fuses and circuit breakers) are not required to comply with the Telecommunications Labelling Instrument.

5.4 Protection against damage

All parts of an installation **shall** be adequately protected against damage which might reasonably be expected to result from mechanical injury, exposure to weather, water or excessive dampness, corrosive fumes, accumulation of dust, steam, oil, high temperature, or any other circumstance to which they will be exposed under the conditions of their use.

5.5 Proper use

5.5.1 Fitness for purpose

A Cabling Product **shall** be selected and installed so that it is fit for its intended purpose.

Note: A Plug with inadequate performance characteristics or an ineffectively terminated Plug would be an example of an installation practice that is not fit for purpose.

5.5.2 Other cabling Standards

In addition to the requirements of this Standard, Customer Cabling should be installed in accordance with the following Standards, where relevant:

- (a) Pathways and spaces for commercial buildings — AS/NZS 3084
- (b) Generic cabling for customer premises – single-tenant homes — AS 11801.4
- (c) Coaxial cabling — AS/NZS 1367
- (d) Telecommunications Installations – Implementation of Customer Premises Cabling - Part 2: Planning and Installation — AS/NZS ISO/IEC 14763.2
- (e) Generic cabling systems for customer premises – data centres — AS 11801.5
- (f) Generic cabling for customer premises – Industrial premises — AS 11801.3

Note 1: A Carrier's specific requirements may also need to be taken into account, for example—

- (a) at the network interface (Network Boundary);
- (b) for coaxial cabling used to supply broadband data services;
- (c) for fibre-to-the-Premises (FTTP) cabling; or
- (d) for the supply of Telecommunications Network services via satellite or terrestrial radio communications.

Note 2: Refer to Appendix L for guidance on the minimum recommendations for Customer Cabling in domestic Premises.

5.6 Generic cabling and cabling linking distributors

5.6.1 Conductor size

Twisted pair Cable linking Distributors or installed as Generic Cabling **shall**—

- (a) have a maximum conductor resistance of 0.0938 Ω /m at 20° C; or
- (b) be selected as part of a solution designed by a—

- (i) Registered Electrical Engineer; or
- (ii) Registered ITEE (Information, Telecommunications and Electronic Engineering) engineer.

Note 1: 0.5 mm nominal conductor diameter (24 AWG) Cable would typically meet this requirement.

Note 2: Additional connectors will increase the resistance of the link which may limit the ability to support remote powering.

Note 3: Cable with a smaller nominal conductor diameter (e.g. 0.40 mm such as that typically used in Underground Cable types) may reduce the length capacity of the link when providing power or other services.

5.6.2 Cable temperature

Cable should not be installed in a manner that may cause the maximum operating temperature rating of the Cable to be exceeded.

Note 1: Cable temperature is the sum of ambient temperature and the temperature rise due to any current feeding through the cable.

Note 2: The maximum operating temperature of a Cable should be available from the Cable manufacturer.

Note 3: The application of remote powering over new or existing Cabling may cause a Cable to exceed its safe temperature limit, making the Cabling unfit for purpose or hazardous. Consideration should be given, but not limited to, the following—

- (a) the Cable type;
- (b) the number of pairs activated in a multi-pair Cable and in a bundle of Cables; and
- (c) installation factors.

Note 4: The Standards Australia Technical Specification SA TS 29125:2019 may provide assistance in determining temperature rise above ambient in a Cable and in Cable bundles, based on the installation environment and Cable construction.

Note 5: Temperature rise data for Cable bundles should be available from Cable manufacturers.

5.7 ES3 generic and special application circuit cabling

5.7.1 ES3 generic circuits

5.7.1.1 Cable requirements

Any Cable used or intended to be used for an ES3 Generic Circuit **shall—**

- (a) be separated from other services and telecommunications circuits in accordance with Clause 9; and
- (b) meet the requirements for ES3 generic Cable in AS/CA S008.

5.7.1.2 Marking of cable route

The Cable route **shall** be marked at regular intervals (e.g. using Cable marker tape meeting the requirements of AS/NZS 2648.1 and includes lettering to identify the service).

5.7.2 ES3 generic circuit warning markings

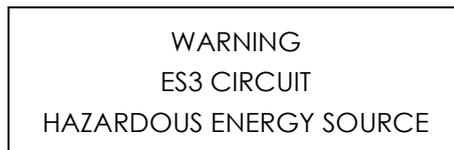
5.7.2.1 Location

Each outlet, panel, frame, Enclosure or other part that allows access to conductive parts of an ES3 circuit **shall** be labelled with an ES3 Generic Circuit warning marking.

5.7.2.2 Warning marking design

An ES3 Generic Circuit warning marking **shall—**

- (a) be durable and legible in accordance with Clause 5.2.3.3 of AS/CA S008;
- (b) be coloured black on a yellow background; and
- (c) have warning marking wording as follows:



5.7.3 ES3 special application circuits

5.7.3.1 Cabling products

Cabling used for or intended to be used for an ES3 Special Application Circuit **shall** meet the relevant requirements of AS/CA S008.

5.7.3.2 Cabling installation

Cabling that supports or is intended to support an ES3 Special Application Circuit—

- (a) **shall not** utilise Generic Cabling;
- (b) **shall** be separated from other services and other telecommunications circuits in accordance with Section 9; and
- (c) **shall** meet the equipment manufacturer's requirements for the intended special application.

5.8 Cable with red sheath

Cable with a red sheath should only be used for Cabling associated with a fire detection and fire alarm system.

Note: Before altering or disconnecting any Cable with a red sheath, the Cabling Provider should check whether it is associated with a fire detection and fire alarm system and treat it accordingly.

5.9 Plug-terminated cabling

5.9.1 Fixed or concealed cabling

Plug-terminated Cabling **shall not** be installed as fixed or concealed Cabling for mating of the Plug with a Port on Customer Equipment unless—

- (a) the Plug is an integral part of a device that is fastened to a wall, floor or ceiling or other permanent building element; or
- (b) the Plug is not fixed and—
 - (i) the Plug terminates a section of Movable Cabling;
 - (ii) the Plug is to mate with a Port on an item of fixed Customer Equipment; and
 - (iii) in every position to which it may be moved when the Plug is not mated with the Port, every part of the section of Movable Cabling is either out of Arm's Reach or housed in a Secure Enclosure that is fastened to a wall, floor or ceiling or other permanent building element.

Note 1: This clause applies irrespective of whether the Plug has been fitted to the Cabling during manufacturing or a Cabling Provider terminates a Cable on the Plug.

Note 2: An Ordinary Person is permitted to connect Cabling to Customer Equipment under very limited circumstances, all of which involve compliance-labelled Cords. As technicians servicing Customer Equipment or testing network connections are often not registered Cabling Providers, a conventional Socket termination and Cord should be provided for connection of Customer Equipment wherever possible. The use of plug-terminated Cabling as fixed or concealed Cabling is also associated with physical safety hazards for network technicians who need to connect test equipment such as a laptop computer directly to the Plug, as the Plug may be high up, in a building cavity or in another location where it is difficult to work safely.

Note 3: General requirements for Movable Cabling are found in Clause 5.10. In the case of a situation as described in item (b), it will usually be necessary to keep the free tail of Cable quite short, as otherwise it may be possible to manipulate it into a position which does not meet the requirements for separation from other services. Where a tail emerges from a building cavity or enters a Secure Enclosure, the Cable should be fixed at that point, so that slack Cable cannot be pushed back by a person working on the fixed equipment.

5.9.2 Connecting cords, patch cords and extension leads

A Cabling Provider **shall not** make an equipment connecting Cord, Patch Cord, extension lead or the like using component parts, whether or not such parts meet the requirements of AS/CA S008.

Note 1: Cords are required to meet the requirements of AS/CA S008. Manufacturers are directed to the regulatory obligations for compliance labelling of Cords.

Note 2: An Ordinary Person is permitted to connect Cabling to Customer Equipment under very limited circumstances, all of which involve compliance-labelled Cords.

5.9.3 ES3 customer cabling

Plug-terminated Cabling **shall not** be installed for use as part of an ES3 circuit if an exposed electrically conductive part of the Plug may be energised by an electrical power supply of the circuit when the Plug is not mated with a compatible Socket.

5.9.4 Suitability of plug

A Plug used to terminate a Cable **shall—**

- (a) be suitable for the construction of the Cable to which the Plug is fitted; and
- (b) secure the terminated Cable with an appropriate anchorage or strain relief to protect the Plug terminations from strain.

Note 1: The manufacturer's product information should be consulted to determine if the Plug is suitable for solid or stranded conductors, shielded or unshielded Cable, the diameter (AWG) of the conductors, and the cross-sectional profile (round or flat) and cross-sectional dimensions of the Cable.

Note 2: As an alternative to fitting a Plug in the field, a wiring system manufacturer may offer a high-performance Cable assembly which has a factory fitted Plug. The manufacturer's installation instructions should explain how to connect the Cable tail to the rest of the Cable run to achieve appropriate performance.

5.10 Movable cabling

5.10.1 Requirements at each possible position

Movable Cabling **shall** comply with the applicable requirements of this Standard in every position to which it may be able to be moved.

Note 1: It will often be necessary to enclose a movable section of Cable in a flexible Conduit or sleeve to ensure it meets the separation requirements from other services.

Note 2: A movable TO is not to be able to be moved to a position where a TO is not permitted, e.g. into a Hazardous Area.

5.10.2 Cable flexibility

Cable installed as Movable Cabling **shall** be of a flexible type which is intended for use as Movable Cabling.

5.10.3 Strain

Movable Cabling **shall** be installed in a manner which will prevent any likely source of strain from damaging the Cabling.

5.11 Cable joints

5.11.1 Jointing method

A joint in a Cable **shall** be made by one of the following means:

- (a) For all types of Cables, using suitable connectors, joiners, compression fittings or other devices meeting the requirements of AS/CA S008.
- (b) For twisted pair Cable, by one of the methods described in Item (a) or by twisting and soldering of conductors.
- (c) For optical fibre Cable, by one of the methods described in Item (a) or by fusion or mechanical splicing.

Note 1: Joints in Cables may reduce the performance of the Cabling system.

Note 2: A joint in Cabling of any type may be referred to as a 'splice' in some Standards.

5.11.2 Physical protection of the joint

A Cable joint **shall** be suitably constructed, enclosed, positioned, and supported to prevent accidental disturbance, mechanical damage and the ingress of dust, moisture or vermin.

5.12 Cable terminations

5.12.1 Access to cable terminations

All telecommunications terminations **shall** be enclosed or located to prevent unintentional contact with an ES2 circuit or an ES3 circuit.

Note: ES3 should only be accessible by suitably qualified Skilled Persons.

5.12.2 Separation from other services

All telecommunications terminations **shall** be separated from the Cable terminations of other services in accordance with Section 9.

5.13 Hazardous energy sources

Customer Cabling **shall not** be used as part of an ES3 circuit except where otherwise allowed in this Standard.

5.14 Interference to other circuits

Any communications or Power Feeding circuit carried in Customer Cabling with any Carriage Service **shall** comply with the requirements of AS/CA S043, where applicable, whether or not the communications or Power Feeding circuit is Connected to a Telecommunications Network.

5.15 Alterations and additions

Every addition to, or alteration to, an existing installation **shall** comply with the relevant requirements of this Standard.

5.16 Tampering or interference with a carrier facility

A Carrier's Lead-In Cabling or network boundary Facilities **shall not** be moved, removed or altered without the prior written authorisation of the Carrier.

Note: If a Carrier publishes a document authorising Cabling Providers to alter its Facilities, for the purpose of this clause such a document will be taken to be the prior written authorisation of the Carrier as long as any terms and conditions set out in the document are adhered to by the Cabling Provider.

5.17 Defective customer cabling or customer equipment not to be reconnected

A Cabling Provider **shall not** reconnect any Cabling, equipment or Line that has been disconnected by the Carrier pursuant to section 446 or section 447 of the *Telecommunications Act 1997* (the Act).

Note: Sections 446 and 447 of the Act empower a Carrier to disconnect Customer Cabling or Customer Equipment if the Carrier has an honest belief that the Cabling or equipment is, or is likely to be, a threat to the health or safety of persons or to the integrity of the Carrier's Telecommunications Network or a Facility.

6 HAZARDOUS CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH HV POWER

6.1 Earth potential rise (EPR)

6.1.1 General

Equipment including—

- (a) Customer Equipment;
- (b) Distributors and other connecting hardware;
- (c) earthed surge suppression devices including Customer lightning protection;
- (d) telecommunications electrodes;
- (e) pits and access holes;
- (f) Cable joints; and
- (g) access points;

that is associated with any Cable, marker tape, or Conduit that contains Electrically Conductive Elements, **shall not** be placed in a location where the EPR contour may exceed 430 V a.c. under power system fault conditions, except as part of an engineered solution in accordance with Clause 6.1.3.

Note 1: If a Building is only supplied by 230 V a.c. single phase power or 400 V a.c. three phase power, there will be no need to consider EPR unless the proposed installation is within the EPR Hazard Zone of an HV Site, as determined in the document described in Clause 6.1.3.

Note 2: Appendix H provides more information about EPR including recommended minimum clearances from certain HV equipment.

6.1.2 HV sites of particular concern

The Cabling Provider **shall** confirm with the power utility as to the extent of the EPR Hazard Zone at an HV Site where Customer Cabling or Customer Equipment is to be installed—

- (a) in or near a power generating station, power transmission substation or power zone substation;
- (b) near an HV transformer or SWER transformer; or
- (c) in or near any HV Site located in an area of high soil resistivity (e.g. rocky or dry, sandy terrain).

6.1.3 Engineered installation

Where an installation cannot be placed in a location where the EPR hazard is less than nominated 430 V a.c. contour, the installation **shall not** proceed unless on the basis of a design certified by a Registered Electrical Engineer or Registered ITEE Engineer as complying with the principles of AS/NZS 3835.1.

Note: A useful reference is HB 100 (CJC 4).

6.1.4 Carrier notification

Any relevant Carrier **shall** be notified in writing of an installation proposed under the conditions of Clause 6.1.3 before the installation proceeds.

6.2 Low frequency induction (LFI)

6.2.1 General

Customer Cables that contain Electrically Conductive Elements **shall not** be installed in the vicinity of an HV Power line where the 50 Hz induced voltages under a phase-to-earth fault condition on the power line may exceed 430 V a.c. in the Customer Cabling, except as part of an engineered solution in accordance with Clause 6.2.2.

Note: More information about LFI is provided in Appendix H.

6.2.2 Engineered installation

Where the level of induction may exceed the limit specified in Clause 6.2.1, the installation **shall not** proceed unless on the basis of a design certified by a Registered Electrical Engineer or Registered ITEE Engineer as complying with the principles of HB 101 (CJC 5) and HB 102 (CJC 6).

Note: Another useful reference is HB 100 (CJC 4).

6.2.3 Carrier notification

Any relevant Carrier **shall** be notified in writing of an installation proposed under the conditions of Clause 6.2.2 before the installation proceeds.

7 HAZARDOUS AREAS AND DAMP LOCATIONS

7.1 Hazardous areas (explosive atmosphere)

7.1.1 Description

Many liquids, gases, vapours, dusts, flyings and fibres that are generated, processed, handled or stored are combustible. When ignited they may burn rapidly and with considerable explosive force if mixed with air in the appropriate proportions. Areas where they may occur in dangerous quantities are classified as Hazardous Areas.

Locations that may contain Hazardous Areas include, but are not limited to the following:

- (a) Vehicle workshops, vehicle parking areas and residential garages.
- (b) Fuel dispensing stations.
- (c) Aircraft hangars.
- (d) Flammable liquid, gas production, processing, handling and storage areas.
- (e) Refineries and major processing plants.
- (f) Laboratories, fume cupboards and storage areas for flammable medical agents.
- (g) Landfill gas, sewage treatment and sewage pumping plants.
- (h) Paint/adhesive manufacturing and storage areas.
- (i) Paint spraying, drying and finishing areas.
- (j) Fruit ripening rooms.
- (k) Dry-cleaning, chemical/plastic/solvent recycling and distillation plants.
- (l) Grain handling, storage and milling areas.
- (m) Any location where combustible powder-based material is produced, prepared, processed, handled, stored or otherwise exists in significant quantities, such as food, organic compounds and timber products, coal, metallic powders and many other powders such as some types of ink powders and plastic dust.
- (n) Battery rooms of energy storage systems.

7.1.2 Classification of hazardous areas

7.1.2.1 General

A Hazardous Area is an area in which an explosive gas atmosphere or dust/air mixture is present, or may be expected to be present, in dangerous quantities so as to require special precautions for the selection, installation and use of Cabling and equipment. Explosive gas atmospheres include flammable vapours (from liquids).

Note: A Hazardous Area may exist inside or outside a Building.

Hazardous Areas are classified as described in Clause 7.1.2.2 and Clause 7.1.2.3.

7.1.2.2 Business premises

7.1.2.2.1 Responsibility for classification

For business (commercial/industrial) Premises, Hazardous Area are classified in accordance with Australian Standards or, in certain cases such as mines or Premises where explosives are processed or manufactured, industry-specific standards or codes.

The responsibility for classification of Hazardous Areas rests with the owner, occupier or person in control of the site who should provide the Cabling Provider with a plan of the Premises identifying the Hazardous Areas with designated zones.

Note: 'NH' indicated on any documentation means 'non-hazardous'.

7.1.2.2.2 Flammable gas or vapour

An explosive atmosphere may consist of a mixture with air of flammable substances in the form of gas or vapour. In such cases, Hazardous Areas are classified in accordance with AS/NZS 60079.10.1 and are typically divided into the following zones based upon the frequency and duration of the occurrence of an explosive atmosphere:

- (a) Zone 0 — The flammable gas or vapour is present continuously or for long periods or frequently.
- (b) Zone 1 — The flammable gas or vapour is likely to occur in normal operation occasionally.
- (c) Zone 2 — The flammable gas or vapour is not likely to occur in normal operation but, if it does occur, will persist for a short period only.

Note: All of the above zones are Hazardous Areas. This information is provided for information only to assist Cabling Providers in reading plans of Hazardous Areas.

7.1.2.2.3 Combustible dust

An explosive atmosphere may consist of a mixture with air of combustible dusts, fibres or flyings in cloud form. In such cases, Hazardous Areas are classified in accordance with

AS/NZS 60079.10.2 and are typically divided into the following zones based upon the frequency and duration of the occurrence of an explosive atmosphere:

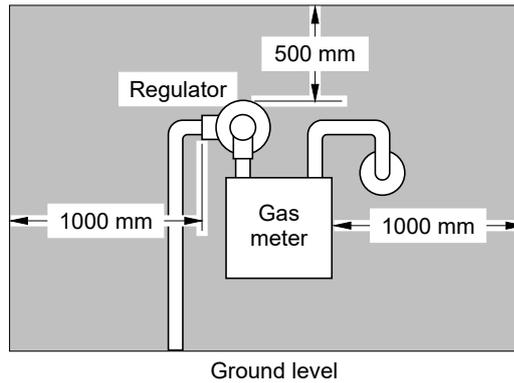
- (a) Zone 20 — Combustible dust is present, as a cloud, continuously or frequently, during normal operation, in sufficient quantity to be capable of producing an explosive concentration of combustible dust mixed with air, and/or where layers of dust of uncontrollable and excessive thickness can be formed.
- (b) Zone 21 — Combustible dust is likely to occur, as a cloud, during normal operation, in sufficient quantities to be capable of producing an explosive concentration of combustible dust mixed with air.
- (c) Zone 22 — Combustible dust may occur as a cloud infrequently and persist for only a short period, or in which accumulations or layers of combustible dust may be present under abnormal conditions and give rise to combustible mixtures of dust in air.

Note: All of the above zones are Hazardous Areas. This information is provided for information only to assist Cabling Providers in reading plans of Hazardous Areas.

7.1.2.3 Domestic premises

There are no specific Australian Standards for classification of Hazardous Areas in domestic Premises. For domestic Premises, Hazardous Areas are defined in this Standard for flammable gas installations only, as follows:

- (a) Reticulated natural gas meters and regulators, as set out in Figure 2.
- (b) Heavier-than-air bottled gas, e.g. Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG), stored in exchange cylinders or in-situ fill cylinders, having an aggregate gas capacity exceeding 30 m³ (approximately 56 kg of LPG) - as set out in Figure 3.



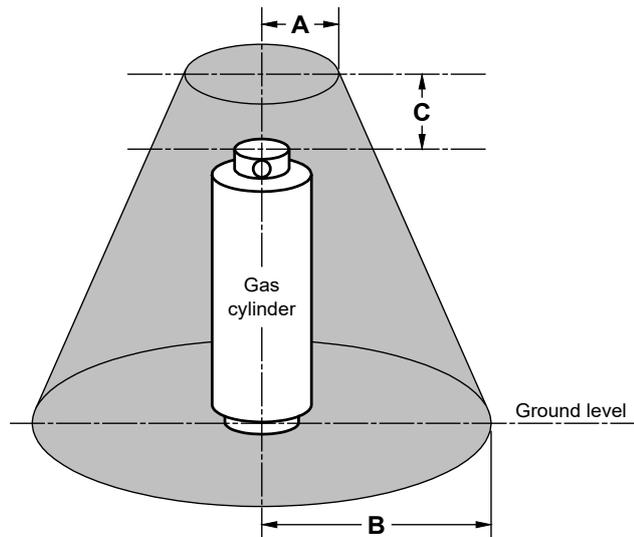
Note 1: The distances are measured from the surface of the gas meter, gas regulator or any gas fitting, whichever is outermost.

Note 2: The Hazardous Area does not extend outside—

- (a) an approved gas enclosure; or
- (b) the gas compartment of a combined gas and telecommunications enclosure approved by the relevant gas utility.

Figure 2

Hazardous area for reticulated gas supply meters and regulators (domestic premises)



Dimension	Exchange cylinder	In-situ fill cylinder
A	500 mm	1500 mm
B	1500 mm	3500 mm
C	500 mm	500 mm

Note 1: The horizontal distances are measured from the centre line of the gas cylinder.

Note 2: The vertical distance is measured from the top of any cylinder valve.

Figure 3

Hazardous area for heavier-than-air bottled gas (domestic premises)

7.1.2.4 Risk factors for cabling

Any Conduit, Cable or equipment installed, or being installed, within a Hazardous Area may create an explosion hazard due to—

- (a) piping or leakage of flammable gas or liquid via Conduits, Cable sheaths or holes through walls to points outside the Hazardous Area where the explosion risk is not controlled;
- (b) propagation of an explosion; or
- (c) ignition of a flammable mixture by electric arcing or sparking caused by such things as—
 - (i) the use of electric tools and equipment during installation or repair;
 - (ii) jointing, connecting or jumpering of metallic conductors;
 - (iii) fusion splicing of optical fibre;
 - (iv) Cable damage (e.g. impact, corrosion);
 - (v) overvoltages (e.g. due to lightning activity); or
 - (vi) static electricity.

7.1.3 Installation of customer cabling and equipment in hazardous areas

7.1.3.1 Identification of hazardous areas

7.1.3.1.1 Business premises

In business (commercial/industrial) Premises, the classification of Hazardous Area is the responsibility of the owner, occupier or person in control of the site. Before commencing work, the Cabling Provider **shall** obtain details of the Hazardous Area determined in accordance with the relevant Standards or Codes (refer to Clause 7.1.2.2).

7.1.3.1.2 Domestic premises

In domestic Premises, before commencing work the Cabling Provider **shall** identify any Hazardous Area in accordance with Clause 7.1.2.3.

7.1.3.2 General requirements

Equipment, including Cabling and connecting hardware, for use in a Hazardous Area **shall** be selected and installed in accordance with Clauses 7.1.3.3 to 7.1.3.8 of this Standard and the relevant requirements of AS/NZS 60079.14.

Where there is any conflict between this Standard and AS/NZS 60079.14, AS/NZS 60079.14 **shall** take precedence.

Note 1: Equipment should, as far as is reasonably practical, be installed outside the Hazardous Area.

Note 2: The requirements for installations in Hazardous Areas can be complex and installers should seek expert advice if necessary.

7.1.3.3 Conduits

Where a Customer Cabling Conduit is installed in a Hazardous Area—

- (a) any Conduit that terminates in a Hazardous Area, including within any pit, draw box, Enclosure or other Cable access point, **shall** be sealed against the transmission of any gas or liquid from the Hazardous Area to any non-hazardous area; and
- (b) any Conduit located within a Hazardous Area **shall not** contain any discontinuity, union, coupling or other fitting between the boundaries of the Hazardous Area or between a sealed point described in Item (a) and any non-hazardous area.

7.1.3.4 Trunking

Trunking **shall not** be installed in a Hazardous Area.

7.1.3.5 Metallic conduits, trunking and enclosures

7.1.3.5.1 Metallic conduits and enclosures

Metallic Conduit or Enclosures constructed from aluminium or light alloys should not be installed within or above a Hazardous Area.

Note: Such materials have the propensity to give rise to sparking that may be incendiary under conditions of frictional contact and that may fall into the Hazardous Area if they are installed outside, but above, the Hazardous Area.

7.1.3.5.2 Metallic trunking

Metallic Trunking constructed from aluminium or light alloys should not be installed above a Hazardous Area.

Note: The installation of Trunking within a Hazardous Area is prohibited by Clause 7.1.3.4, regardless of the composition of the Trunking.

7.1.3.5.3 Equipotential bonding

Metallic pathways, supports, Conduits, Trunking or Enclosures located within or above a Hazardous Area should be equipotential bonded to the protective earthing system to minimise the risk of static discharges and voltage differentials that may result in arcing or sparking if metallic services or parts are accidentally bridged.

7.1.3.6 Cables

Where any Customer Cable is located within a Hazardous Area:

- (a) The Cable **shall not** contain any discontinuity between the boundaries of the Hazardous Area or between a termination point that complies with Clause 7.1.3.7 and any non-hazardous area.
- (b) Any Cable that contains Electrically Conductive Elements passing through or above a Hazardous Area should be protected against mechanical damage (e.g. impact, vermin) or environmental damage (e.g. heat, UV) that may result in arcing or sparking.

Note 1: Cable damage has the propensity to give rise to sparking that may be incendiary and that may fall into the Hazardous Area if the Cable is installed outside, but above, the Hazardous Area.

Note 2: Mechanical protection of the Cable may be provided in the form of a robust Building protrusion or recess, a cover guard or by installing the Cable in suitable Conduit.

- (c) Where any Cable that contains Electrically Conductive Elements passes through or above a Hazardous Area, lightning surge suppression for the Cable should be installed outside the Hazardous Area to reduce any overvoltages to a level that would significantly reduce the risk of arcing or sparking within or above the Hazardous Area.

Note 1: Overvoltages have the propensity to give rise to sparking that may be incendiary and that may fall into the Hazardous Area if the Cable is installed outside, but above, the Hazardous Area.

Note 2: Refer to AS/NZS 1768 for guidance about installing lightning surge suppression.

7.1.3.7 Cable terminations, joints, splices and telecommunications outlets

Equipment that may be a source of ignition, such as Cable terminations, joints/splices and Telecommunications Outlets, **shall not** be located in a Hazardous Area described in Clause 7.1.2 unless the equipment is selected and installed in accordance with AS/NZS 60079.14.

7.1.3.8 Safe working practices

The Cabling Provider **shall not** take electric tools and equipment, including battery-operated tools and equipment, into a Hazardous Area unless—

- (a) they are approved or certified for use in a Hazardous Area; or

- (b) the area has been verified as safe (i.e. free from any flammable gas or combustible dust and applying suitable conditions of control to avoid such hazards during the works).

Note 1: Examples of electrical equipment include battery-operated tools and equipment, and personal items that are battery-operated (e.g. hearing aids, portable audio/video equipment, key-ring torches, calculators, watches, pagers, mobile phones, and remote-control car keys).

Note 2: Guidance on conditions of control for safe work may be found in AS/NZS 60079.14, Annex D. For major industries, works in a Hazardous Area may also be subject to a hot work permit issued by the site owner.

Note 3: Other practices that may create sparks or heat such as striking metal on metal or concrete and use of flames, should also be avoided in Hazardous Areas, e.g. driving a nail with a hammer could be replaced by use of screw fastenings using hand tools.

Note 4: Static electricity is a common cause of ignition in Hazardous Areas and conditions that may generate static electricity should be avoided, e.g. rubbing of plastic surfaces and wearing of synthetic clothing. Synthetic clothing with wool is particularly hazardous. Footwear should have antistatic soles.

Note 5: Full cover (ankle to neck to wrist) cotton clothing is recommended for working in Hazardous Areas to reduce static electricity on the body and provide protection in case of flash fires.

7.2 Damp locations

7.2.1 General

Cabling installed in a Damp Location **shall be—**

- (a) of such a type; or
- (b) installed in such a manner

to prevent the ingress of moisture.

7.2.2 Restricted zones

7.2.2.1 Application

The requirements of this Clause apply to zones in certain Damp Locations where—

- (a) the risk of electric shock is increased by a reduction in body resistance and contact of the body with earth potential; and
- (b) the presence of moisture and condensation, and consequential risk of corrosion due to electrolysis, is high.

Note: The installation of MDFs and TOs in restricted zones is prohibited by Clauses 13.4 and 15.3.1. Clause 7.2.3 applies to any other equipment installed in a restricted zone.

7.2.2.2 Restricted zone boundaries

The boundaries of the restricted zones are as follows:

- (a) For a location containing a bath or shower — within the zones described in Appendix A, Clause A.1 and Figures A1 to A4.
- (b) For a location containing a basin or fixed water container not exceeding 45 litres per container — within the zone described in Appendix A, Clause A.2 and Figure A5.
- (c) For a location containing a tub or fixed water container exceeding 45 litres — within the zone described in Appendix A, Clause A.3 and Figure A6.
- (d) For a location containing a spa pool, spa tub or swimming pool not exceeding a capacity of 5000 litres — within a horizontal distance of 1 m and a vertical distance of 2.5 m of the water container of the spa pool, spa tub or swimming pool.
- (e) For a location containing a swimming pool exceeding a capacity of 5000 litres — within a horizontal distance of 2 m and a vertical distance of 2.5 m of the water container of the swimming pool.
- (f) For a location containing a fountain or water feature — within a horizontal distance of 2 m and a vertical distance of 2.5 m of the water container of the fountain or water feature.
- (g) Within a room or Enclosure containing a sauna heater.
- (h) Within a refrigeration room.
- (i) Within the hosing down area of any location where general hosing down operations are carried out.

7.2.3 Equipment installed in a restricted zone

Any equipment installed in a restricted zone (other than an MDF or a Telecommunications Outlet, for which installation in a restricted zone is prohibited) **shall**—

- (a) be of a type designed and constructed for the location and conditions of use; and
- (b) have a minimum degree of protection against the entry of water, in accordance with AS 60529, for the following locations:
 - (i) IPX7 for a bathroom.
 - (ii) IPX6 for a shower room.
 - (iii) An appropriate degree of protection in other cases.

Note 1: The installation of an MDF or a Telecommunications Outlet in a restricted zone is prohibited by Clauses 13.4 and 15.3.1.

Note 2: The installation of Customer Equipment in any restricted zone, particularly in a bathroom or shower area, is not recommended.

Note 3: See Clause 17.1 for Telecommunications Outlets or other equipment exposed to the weather.

8 CABLE SUPPORTS AND ENCLOSURES

8.1 General

Cable **shall** be supported or secured at suitable intervals to—

- (a) ensure the safe passage of persons where persons may reasonably be expected to pass;
- (b) maintain separation from Hazardous Services; and
- (c) comply with the Cable manufacturer's instructions in accordance with Clause 5.2.

8.2 Improper support of cabling

8.2.1 Attachment to other services

Customer Cabling **shall not** be secured to a Cable, Conduit or pipe of another service (e.g. a power Cable/Conduit or water/waste pipe).

Note: LV Power and telecommunications Conduits may share the same catenary support as long as they are independently secured to the catenary support and separated in accordance with Clause 8.5.

8.2.2 Suspended ceilings

Customer Cabling installed in a suspended ('false') ceiling **shall not** be—

- (a) laid on the ceiling tiles or their supports; or
- (b) tied to the ceiling hanger rods.

Note: Cables should be secured to independent supports such as a tray, trough, hook or Catenary Support System within the ceiling space or secured directly to the underside of the floor above.

8.3 Conduit

8.3.1 Prohibited conduit colours

Customer Cable, whether indoor or outdoor, **shall not** be enclosed in Conduit of a colour specified in Table 1, except in the following three cases:

- (a) Such parts of the Conduit that are fully encased in concrete or inaccessible under structural concrete, in which case the ends of the Conduit **shall** be made white in a durable manner and the Conduit used exclusively for telecommunications Cabling.
- (b) Conduit that does not contain an HV circuit and which is subducted in a continuous run of insulating Conduit meeting the requirements of AS/CA S008 and IPX8 of AS 60529 in which the Customer Cable **shall** be enclosed.

- (c) A Customer Cable that does not contain Electrically Conductive Elements which may be directly installed, or sub-ducted in insulating Conduit that is not a prohibited colour, in an existing Conduit containing a service listed in Table 1 in which case the Cable **shall** be labelled at all access points with a suitable warning that it may contain a hazardous light source.

Note 1: The exception of Item (a) is based upon the rationale that subsequent access to the Conduit between the existing ends of the Conduit would be inhibited by the physical difficulty in doing so, and that the misleading colour of the Conduit would therefore be unlikely to represent a safety hazard to Cabling Providers wanting to access a Cable in the Conduit.

Note 2: The exception of Items (b) and (c) are subject to the requirements of the relevant utility for any other service contained in the Conduit and are based on the rationale that the enveloping Conduit identifies the other enclosed service, not the telecommunications service that also happens to be enclosed or sub-ducted in the enveloping Conduit.

Note 3: To avoid doubt, Item (b) precludes any Customer Cable containing Electrically Conductive Elements from being installed or sub-ducted with HV circuits under any circumstances. Item (b) also applies even if the Conduit is empty. In such cases, this provides some protection if a Hazardous Service is subsequently installed in the Conduit, plus effectively incurs a cost penalty for not installing the correct colour of Conduit for telecommunications Cabling in the first place. However, it also allows the installation of a large enveloper Conduit of a colour identified in Table 1 for sub-ducting of several services between draw points. (Clause 18.3.4 applies if the enveloper Conduit is underground and is not a prohibited colour).

Note 4: See also Clause 18.3 for use of Conduit for underground Customer Cabling.

Note 5: Access points described in Item (c) that are damp and contain electrical cables (e.g. underground electrical pits) may be hazardous to Cabling Providers, due to electrical leakage from power cables or joints, and should only be accessed by Skilled Persons.

Table 1

Prohibited conduit colours for customer cabling

Colour	Service normally associated with the colour
Orange	AC Mains power
Yellow or yellow-ochre	Fuel, process, toxic or medical gases
Silver-grey	Steam
Brown	Flammable and combustible liquids
Violet	Acids and alkalis
Light blue	Compressed air

8.3.2 Access to conduit of a prohibited colour

Where a Customer Cable is enclosed, in accordance with Clause 8.3.1, in Conduit of a colour specified in Table 1, a Cabling Provider **shall not** access that Conduit at any point along its length between existing access points (such as existing pits, access holes or junction boxes) unless the Cabling Provider is also licensed by the appropriate authority, or supervised by an appropriately licensed person, to work on the service normally identified by the colour of the Conduit.

Note: An example is if the Conduit is orange, the Cabling Provider should be a licensed electrical worker or be supervised by a licensed electrical worker.

8.3.3 Sharing of conduit with a hazardous service

8.3.3.1 Sub-ducting of customer cabling in conduit of another service

A Customer Cable that contains Electrically Conductive Elements **shall not** be accommodated in the same Conduit as a Cable carrying a Hazardous Service irrespective of the colour of that Conduit unless—

- (a) the Customer Cable is sub-ducted in the Conduit by the method described in Item 8.3.1(b); and
- (b) the Hazardous Service is not an HV circuit.

8.3.3.2 Sub-ducting of ES3 circuits with other customer cables

A Cable carrying an ES3 circuit **shall not** be installed in the same Conduit as a Cable carrying ES1 or ES2 circuit(s) unless all the following are met:

- (a) The Cable carrying the ES3 circuit is sub-ducted in a continuous run of insulating Conduit that is not a prohibited colour (see Table 1) and that complies with IPX8 of AS 60529.
- (b) The continuity of the sub-ducting is maintained through any common (shared) access points such as draw boxes, pits or access holes.
- (c) The sub-ducting is clearly identified as carrying an ES3 circuit at each access point.
- (d) For Underground Cabling and any situations where moisture is present, any joint or termination of the ES3 circuit is contained in a separate pit, access hole or Enclosure to any pit, access hole or Enclosure containing a Cable carrying ES1 or ES2 circuit(s).
- (e) The owner or manager of the Conduit containing the Cables carrying ES1 or ES2 circuit(s) consents to the installation of the Cable carrying the ES3 circuit in the Conduit.

Note: It is recommended that ES3 circuits be installed in separate Conduits, draw boxes, pits, access holes and Enclosures from ES1 or ES2 circuit(s).

8.4 Earthing of cable support systems and cable enclosures

An electrically conductive cable support system or electrically conductive cable enclosure may be Connected to Protective Earth in accordance with Clause 20.19.

8.5 Separation from other services

Customer Cable installed in or on a Cable support system **shall** be separated from other services in accordance with the requirements of Section 16 if the support system—

- (a) is in or on any Building or other contiguous, permanent structure;
- (b) is within an underground structure such as a service tunnel or mine;
- (c) comprises an outdoor tray, trough or Trunking system installed above the surface of the ground; or
- (d) comprises an indoor or outdoor catenary support that does not support an HV circuit.

Note: In other cases, Customer Cable is to be separated from other services in accordance with Section 18 or 19, as applicable.

8.6 Removal of sharp edges

All surfaces of Cable supports and Enclosures (e.g. a tray, Duct, Conduit or Trunking) **shall** be free of burrs, sharp edges or sharp projections.

8.7 Fire detection and fire alarm system cables

Cables and Cable support systems should not be installed above fire detection and fire alarm system Cables.

Note 1: Where fire detection and fire alarm system Cables are required to comply with the degrees of protection specified in AS/NZS 3013, the Cables should be installed in a manner such that the collapse of other Cabling systems (e.g. due to heat or fire) will not compromise the fire detection and fire alarm system Cabling.

Note 2: Cables associated with a fire detection and fire alarm system normally have a red sheath or permanent red markers on the sheath at regular intervals.

9 SEPARATION OF SERVICES – GENERAL

9.1 Separation from LV power or HV circuits

9.1.1 Separation from LV or HV cables

The requirements for separation of Customer Cables from LV Power cables and HV circuits vary depending on their location, i.e. whether the Cables are located in or on a Building, underground or aerial. Refer to Sections 16, 17, 18 and 19.

9.1.2 Separation from LV power terminations

9.1.2.1 Shared enclosure

The conductors and terminations of a Customer Cable may be located within the same Enclosure as the conductors and terminations of an LV Power Cable subject to the requirements of Clauses 9.1.2.2 and 9.1.2.3.

9.1.2.2 Prevention of accidental personal contact with LV power terminations

The conductors and terminations of a Customer Cable **shall not** be located within the same Enclosure, building cavity or room as the uninsulated and single-insulated conductors and terminations of an LV Power Cable unless—

- (a) accidental access to the LV Power conductors and terminations by persons working on the Customer Cable conductors and terminations is prevented by means of a physical barrier or obstruction that prevents contact with the LV Power conductors or terminations by any part of the body or by any tool being used by the Cabling Provider; or
- (b) the Customer Cable and the LV Power Cable are terminated on building control or monitoring equipment that is installed in a Restricted Access Area where only Skilled Persons who are qualified and authorised are permitted, who are qualified and authorised to install or maintain both LV Power installations and Customer Cabling.

9.1.2.3 Prevention of accidental electrical contact between customer cable terminations and LV power terminations

The conductors and terminations of a Customer Cable **shall** be separated from the uninsulated and single-insulated conductors and terminations of an LV Power Cable by either a minimum distance of 150 mm or by means of a permanent, rigidly-fixed barrier of durable insulating material or metal earthed in accordance with Clause 20.17 unless all of the following are met:

- (a) The Customer Cable and the LV Power Cable are terminated on building control or monitoring equipment that is installed in a Restricted Access Area where only Skilled Persons—

- (i) who are qualified and authorised to enter the Restricted Access Area are permitted; and
 - (ii) who are qualified and authorised to install or maintain both LV Power installations and Customer Cabling.
- (b) Separate cables are used for LV Power and telecommunications.
- (c) Any telecommunications circuit that is terminated on the building control or monitoring equipment—
- (i) does not share the same Cable sheath as any other telecommunications circuit; and
 - (ii) only connects to a Telecommunications Network via an appropriate isolating interface.

Note: An appropriate isolating interface is Carrier equipment or Customer Equipment that meets the requirements of AS/NZS 62368.1 for an ES1 or ES2 circuit interface, as applicable to the circumstances. Examples are a modem, LAN switch or a Line Isolation Device.

9.1.3 Separation from HV circuit terminations

9.1.3.1 Shared enclosure

The conductors and terminations of a Customer Cable **shall not** be located within the same Enclosure or building cavity as the conductors and terminations of an HV circuit.

Note 1: Customer Cable conductors and terminations and HV conductors and terminations may be contained in the same room, subject to the requirements of Clause 9.1.3.2, as long as the HV conductors and terminations are separately enclosed within the room.

Note 2: Installation of a Distributor in the same room as any HV equipment is not recommended.

9.1.3.2 Separation of enclosures

The enclosed conductors and terminations of a Customer Cable **shall** be separated from the conductors and terminations of a separately enclosed HV circuit by a minimum distance of 450 mm, whether or not there is an interposing barrier.

Note: The 450 mm distance is measured between the actual conductors and terminations within their respective Enclosures, not between the Enclosures. However, allowance should be made for any future equipment expansion within each Enclosure.

9.2 Separation from services other than LV power or HV circuits

9.2.1 General

The Cables, conductors and terminations of Customer Cabling **shall** be separated from non-telecommunications services such as

plumbing and ELV power cables so as not to impede access to, or repair of, the other service or the Customer Cabling.

Note 1: A minimum clearance of 50 mm is recommended where Customer Cabling runs alongside other service cables, Conduits or pipes.

Note 2: The attachment of Customer Cabling to any non-telecommunications service is prohibited by Clause 8.2.1.

9.2.2 Separation from non-electrical hazardous services

The Cables, conductors and terminations of Customer Cabling **shall** be separated from non-electrical Hazardous Services as follows:

- (a) Any pipe containing flammable or corrosive liquid or gas, steam, hot water exceeding a temperature of 60° C, compressed air or any other liquid or gas under high pressure—
 - (i) for Cable, Conduit or Trunking, a minimum distance of 150 mm except at crossings, within wall cavities or shared Trunking, where separation by a suitable barrier or heat insulation, as appropriate, is acceptable; and
 - (ii) for Cable terminations, a minimum distance of 150 mm.
- (b) Any meter, container, cylinder, tap, vent, hose, regulator or associated fitting for oxygen or flammable gas—
 - (i) for Cable, Conduit or Trunking, not behind the meter, container, cylinder, tap, vent, hose, regulator or associated fitting a minimum distance of 150 mm and in accordance with Clauses 7.1.3.3 to 7.1.3.6; and
 - (ii) for Cable terminations, in accordance with Clause 7.1.3.7.
- (c) Any meter, container, tap, vent, hose, regulator or associated fitting for flammable liquid, steam, hot water exceeding a temperature of 60° C, compressed air or any other liquid or non-flammable gas under high pressure—
 - (i) for Cable or Conduit, a minimum distance of 150 mm; and
 - (ii) for Cable terminations, a minimum distance of 150 mm.

Note: Refer to Table 2 for a summary of minimum separation requirements.

Table 2

Customer cabling — minimum separation requirements from other services in or on a building (informative)

Customer Cabling situation		Electricity								Oxygen or flammable gas				Water or waste ⁹				Heating oil, steam or compressed air		
		ELV		LV		HV				Pipe	Connection	Meter	Cylinder	Pipe	Connection	Meter	Pump/Cistern	Pipe	Connection	Pump/Tank
		Cable	Connection	Cable	Connection	Cable		Connection ⁴												
						MC ⁵	SC ⁵	MC ⁵	SC ⁵											
Metallic Cable	Unenclosed	0		50 ²	150 ³	300 ⁶	450		150 ⁷	150			50	150		150 ⁷	150			
	In Conduit	0		0	150 ³	150	450		150 ⁷	150			0	150		150 ⁷	150			
	Connection, TO or joint	0	150 ³	50 ²	150 ³	450				150	Outside hazardous area ⁸			150		150				
Optical fibre Cable ¹	Unenclosed	0		0	150 ³	0	450		150 ⁷	150			50	150		150 ⁷	150			
	In Conduit	0		0	150 ³	0	450		150 ⁷	150			0	150		150 ⁷	150			
	Connection or splice	0	150 ³	0	150 ³	0	450		150	Outside hazardous area ⁸			150		150					
<p>Note 1: If the optical fibre Cable contains any Electrically Conductive Elements (e.g. a metallic strength member, armouring or tracer), it is to be treated as a metallic Cable).</p> <p>Note 2: If the Cables are separated by a barrier of durable insulating material or metal or within a Conduit, no further separation is required unless the Cables are within 50 mm of any securing face of Building structure that may be screwed or nailed.</p> <p>Note 3: Cabling Providers working on Customer Cabling are to be protected against accidental contact with ELV or LV electrical connections by effective means (for example, an insulated barrier, a shield, shroud or suitable distance). The Customer Cabling connections are to be separated from ELV/LV electrical connections by at least 150 mm by a permanent, rigidly fixed barrier of durable insulating material or earthed metal. In the case where such a fixed barrier is applied, no further separation is required.</p>									<p>Note 4: The installation of Customer Cabling conductors or terminations in the same Enclosure as any HV conductor or terminations is not permitted.</p> <p>Note 5: MC = Multi-Core SC = Single Core</p> <p>Note 6: This may be reduced to a minimum of 150 mm if the Cables are separated by a permanent, rigidly fixed barrier of durable insulating material or earthed metal provided that a minimum clearance between the Cables through air anywhere around or over or under the barrier is at least 175 mm.</p> <p>Note 7: Separation by a suitable barrier or heat insulation, as appropriate, is acceptable at crossings, within wall cavities or within shared Trunking</p> <p>Note 8: Connection devices, Telecommunications Outlets, joints or splices are not to be installed within a Hazardous Area unless they are selected and installed in accordance with Clause 7.1.3.7.</p> <p>Note 9: These are the recommended minimum separation distances to ensure compliance with Clause 9.2.1 and to provide adequate clearance to install or access the telecommunications Cabling.</p> <p>Note 10: All dimensions given are in millimetres (mm).</p>											

9.3 Separation of ES1, ES2 and ES3

9.3.1 Sharing of cable

An ES3 circuit (including but not limited to an RFT-C Circuit or RFT-V Circuit) **shall not** be carried in the same Cable sheath as an ES1, or ES2 circuit.

Note 1: ES1 and ES2 may be carried in the same Cable (i.e. share the same Cable sheath).

Note 2: For a summary of separation requirements for Indoor Cabling, refer to Table G1 in Appendix G.

9.3.2 ES3 circuit terminations

Any ES3 circuit termination **shall** be separated from the terminations of an ES1 or ES2 circuit by either—

- (a) a minimum distance of 150 mm or;
- (b) a permanent, rigidly fixed barrier of—
 - (i) durable insulating material; or
 - (ii) metal earthed in accordance with Clause 20.17.

9.3.3 ES3 circuits

A Cable carrying an ES3 circuit and its terminations **shall** be separated from any Cable carrying ES1 or ES2 and its terminations in the same way as for an LV Power Cable except for the sub-ducting of Cables carrying ES3 circuits in accordance with Clause 8.3.3.2.

Note: A Cable carrying an ES3 circuit is Customer Cabling and, accordingly, is also required to be separated from LV Power Cables and HV circuits and terminations in accordance with this Standard.

9.3.4 Separation of ES1 and ES2 terminations

A separation of at least 0.5 mm **shall** be maintained between the terminations of ES1 and ES2 circuits.

9.4 Separation from lightning down-conductors

Customer Equipment, Customer Cable that contains Electrically Conductive Elements, and telecommunications earthing and power distribution conductors **shall** be separated from any lightning down-conductor from an air termination in accordance with the requirements of AS/NZS 1768.

Note: If a separation of more than 9 m cannot be achieved, the required minimum separation should be determined from AS/NZS 1768.

9.5 Steel wire armoured (SWA) cables

A Customer Cable that has steel wire armouring that is connected to Protective Earth in accordance with Clause 20.19 is exempt from the LV Power Cable and HV circuit separation requirements in this Standard, as long as—

- (a) the LV or HV Cable also has an earthed SWA; and
- (b) the LV or HV Cable is fitted with an earth leakage circuit breaker (e.g. residual current device) that is appropriate to the site requirements.

10 SURGE SUPPRESSION

10.1 Assessment of the need for surge suppression

The Cabling Provider **shall** assess the need for surge suppression in accordance with AS 4262.1 for the protection of persons using a service Connected to a Telecommunications Network, where—

- (a) twisted pair Customer Cabling is provided to a Building or between Buildings and structures;
- (b) the Network Boundary is not located in or on that Building or structure; and
- (c) the Customer Cabling will be used to connect Terminal Equipment in or on that Building or structure.

Note 1: The Carrier usually assesses the need for surge suppression for the protection of the Ordinary Person at the Building or structure containing the Network Boundary, and installs it at or before the Network Boundary if required.

Note 2: This requirement applies even if a Telecommunications Network service is supplied to the Premises via an optical fibre, wireless, satellite or any other non-electrically conductive medium.

10.2 Installation of surge suppression where required

The Cabling Provider **shall** install surge suppression at a Building or structure where Terminal Equipment will be Connected, in accordance with Sections 4 and 5 of AS 4262.1, if—

- (a) Clause 10.1 applies; and
- (b) the risk of injury is assessed as high based on the criteria of Section 3 of AS 4262.1.

Note 1: For surge suppression to be effective, it should be installed at the Building or structure where the Terminal Equipment is used. Refer to AS 4262.1 for details.

Note 2: Where a Cable is provided between two Buildings, for the surge suppression to be effective it needs to be installed at the point where the Cable enters each Building, i.e. at both ends of the Cable between the Buildings.

Note 3: It is recommended that Cables external to a Building be Connected to equipment with a Port that is classified as an 'external circuit' or be Connected by a suitable Line Isolation Device.

10.3 Surge suppression device

Where surge suppression is installed on twisted pair Cable for any reason and—

- (a) is connected between telecommunications Line conductors and earth; and

- (b) is installed in the Customer Cabling (e.g. at a Distributor, terminal block or joint);

the device **shall** meet the requirements of AS/NZS 4117 for—

- (i) either a Class 1 or a Class 3 device where installed within an MDF; or
- (ii) a Class 1 device for any other location with the device being designed by a Registered Electrical Engineer or Registered ITEE Engineer.

Note 1: Class 1 devices to AS/NZS 4117 should have a specified minimum DC firing voltage of 400 V to the common (earth) terminal. A device with a nominal firing voltage of between 500 V and 600 V will normally be required to allow for manufacturing tolerances.

Note 2: Class 3 devices to AS/NZS 4117 should have a specified minimum DC firing voltage of 190 V to the common (earth) terminal. A device with a nominal firing voltage of 230 V will normally be required to allow for manufacturing tolerances.

Note 3: Both Class 1 and Class 3 devices should have a maximum limiting voltage of 1200 V d.c. and a holdover test voltage of at least 52 V d.c.

Note 4: The reason a Class 3 device is allowable in Item (i) is in recognition of the higher integrity of a hard-wired earth at an MDF.

Note 5: Surge suppression devices installed on any Lines carrying voltages exceeding 50 V d.c. (e.g. for remote Power Feeding) should have a specified minimum DC firing voltage and holdover voltage exceeding the normal DC line voltage.

Note 6: Insertion of a surge suppression device may impair high frequency data transmission capabilities.

10.4 Earthing of the surge suppression device

Any surge suppression device installed for any reason in twisted pair Customer Cabling (e.g. at a Distributor, terminal block or joint) and connected between telecommunications Line conductors and earth, **shall** be earthed in accordance with Clause 20.20.

11 OPTICAL FIBRE AND COAXIAL CABLE SYSTEMS

11.1 Optical fibre systems

11.1.1 General exemption from separation requirements

While Customer Cabling that does not contain Electrically Conductive Elements is exempt from certain separation requirements in this Standard, it should be installed in such a way so as to ensure a Cabling Provider or an Ordinary Person is not exposed to electrical hazards while testing or connecting the Customer Cabling.

Note: In some circumstances the installer of the Cabling may need to be appropriately licensed. For example, the installer may be required to be a licensed electrical worker to draw the Cabling through electrical Conduits.

11.1.2 Inspection and cleaning

An optical fibre interface should be inspected using an instrument designed for the purpose.

If necessary, the interface should be cleaned using equipment designed for the purpose and reinspected to ensure that it is clean before making a connection.

Note: Safe inspection and cleaning if required of optical fibre interfaces is recommended as contaminants will affect performance of the connection.

11.1.3 Inspecting apparatus

Visual inspecting apparatus **shall** be safe to the eye for the fibre being inspected.

Note 1: It is recommended that an indirect viewing device be used in the inspection of connector end-faces, e.g. a video-scope or video probe.

Note 2: Direct viewing devices may be used on non-active (dark) fibres but this is not recommended.

11.1.4 Safety of the installation

The Cabling Provider **shall** ensure—

- (a) optical fibre Cables carry appropriate markings or labelling, or another form of identification, to distinguish them from metallic Cables and Cables containing other services (e.g. AC Mains power);
- (b) all access points (e.g. splice Enclosures, connectors) where disconnected fibres may be able to emit laser radiation are appropriately labelled (refer to Clause 11.1.6.8 for multiple connectors, outlets and access points);

- (c) suitable mechanically protective eyewear and clothing is worn when preparing, cutting or splicing optical fibres;
- (d) that suitable measures are taken to avoid exposure to hazardous light levels; and
- (e) no fibre particles or shards, hazardous solvents or chemicals are left on site at the completion of the work. All items are to be disposed of in a suitable hazardous material or 'sharps' container, as applicable.

11.1.5 Labelling of fibre optic panels and enclosures

11.1.5.1 Warning of potential hazardous laser levels

All optical fibre panels and Enclosures **shall** be labelled to warn of the potential that hazardous laser levels may be present.

11.1.5.2 Access to emitted radiation

Each optical connector, splice box or other part that may emit radiation when opened **shall** be marked, e.g. with a label, sleeve, tag or tape.

Note: The labelling for connectors may be located in close proximity where mounting the label on the connector itself is not practical.

11.1.5.3 Types of laser warning markings

Laser warning markings **shall** consist of—

- (a) a Warning Label meeting the requirements of Figure 1 of AS/NZS IEC 60825.1; and
- (b) an Explanatory Label meeting the requirements Figure 2 of AS/NZS IEC 60825.1.

11.1.5.4 Laser warning marking style

Laser warning markings **shall** be coloured black on a yellow background, appropriately sized and legible for the area served.

11.1.5.5 Laser explanatory label wording

The laser explanatory label **shall** provide a person with warnings of potentially dangerous laser radiation. Wording on the Label should be such that effective warning is given to any person who may or may not be familiar with laser radiation and the danger of exposure to it. Laser beams have the ability to damage eyesight.

The text for a laser explanatory label should be as follows:

<p>CAUTION VISIBLE AND INVISIBLE LASER BEAM AVOID EXPOSURE TO THE BEAM</p>
--

The above wording for the laser explanatory label is not mandatory and other words that convey the same meaning may be used.

11.1.5.6 Marking durability

The durability of the laser warning markings **shall** meet Clause 5.2.3.3 of AS/CA S008.

11.1.5.7 Fibre outlets in work areas

Fibre outlets in work areas do not require a laser explanatory label.

11.1.5.8 Marking of groups of optical fibre connectors, outlets and access points

Groups of optical fibre connectors, outlets or access points such as Patch Panels may be marked as a group. A single clearly visible triangular Laser Warning Label marking may be used rather than having one Laser Warning Label for each connector/outlet. A minimum of one Laser Explanatory Label **shall** be installed on the rack or frame for each location.

11.1.5.9 Multiple markings

Where a group of optical fibre connectors/outlets are enclosed within a housing, then a Laser Explanatory Label **shall** be installed and clearly visible both before and after the housing is opened. This may require the use of more than one laser warning marking, such as one on the outside of a cabinet door and one inside on the rack/frame.

11.1.6 Unused optical fibre connectors and adaptors

Unused optical fibre connectors and adaptors **shall** be covered by suitable Plugs or protective covers.

Note: Protective covers and caps should provide suitable optical attenuation to reduce the laser hazard. They also provide physical protection for the optical fibre interface and help minimise contamination of the interface.

11.2 Coaxial cable systems

A telecommunications circuit **shall not** be Connected to the outer conductor of a coaxial Cable that may be touched by an Ordinary Person, e.g. at a coaxial connector, unless—

- (a) the circuit meets the requirements of an ES1 circuit; or
- (b) the outer conductor is permanently Connected to Protective Earth in accordance with Clause 20.18.

Note 1: For guidance in the design, installation and repair of coaxial Cable systems, refer to AS/NZS 1367.

Note 2: A Carrier's specific requirements may need to be taken into account for the design, installation or repair of any coaxial Cabling system used to supply broadband data services (e.g. 'cable' internet).

12 DISTRIBUTORS

12.1 General

This section applies to all Distributors. Section 13 specifies additional requirements for a Distributor that terminates a Carrier's twisted pair Lead-In Cabling (i.e. an MDF).

12.2 Cross-connections

Cross-Connections (e.g. Jumpers or Patch Cords) should match or exceed the class of the installed Cabling system.

Note: For example, an AS/NZS 11801 series Class D Cabling system (using Category 5 components) should use Category 5 or Category 6 Jumpers or Patch Cord.

12.3 Records

12.3.1 General

Where Cross-Connections are made by means of Jumpers—

- (a) the Cabling Provider **shall** supply sufficient information (records) relating to the Cabling Work performed to enable Cables and Cross-Connections to be correctly identified and Connected; and
- (b) the records **shall** be legible and updateable.

Note: AS/NZS 3085.1 provides guidelines for the recording of installation details, including Distributor records.

12.3.2 Identification of ES3 circuits

ES3 terminations and Cross-Connections **shall** be clearly identified in the records and by appropriate labelling or marking of the Distributor connection modules.

12.4 Outdoor installation

A Distributor installed in a position exposed to the weather **shall**—

- (a) have a minimum degree of protection against the entry of water of IPX3 of AS 60529 or be enclosed in an Enclosure assessed against the relevant clauses of AS/CA S008 and providing a minimum degree of protection of IPX3; and
- (b) be installed in such a way that a minimum degree of protection of IPX3 of AS 60529 is maintained.

Note: Where the location is known to be subject to extreme environmental conditions, consideration should be given to the use of an Enclosure with a superior degree of protection. In this respect, environmental features such as high temperature, snow, ice, driving rain, severe dust conditions, salt-laden or corrosive atmosphere, the presence of flora or fauna, and areas subject to unusual mechanical stresses, may influence the degree of protection required for the Enclosure.

12.5 Enclosure construction

Where a Distributor is constructed on site, it **shall** comply with the following:

- (a) Cable entry holes **shall**—
 - (i) be free of sharp edges or burrs; or
 - (ii) have a grommet of insulating material fitted.
- (b) Provision **shall** be made to enable electrically conductive Enclosures, frames and backmounts to be Connected to Protective Earth in accordance with Clause 20.19.
- (c) Any openings in Enclosures, other than Cable entries, **shall** comply with the physical requirements for electrical Enclosures given in AS/NZS 62368.1.
- (d) All surfaces of the Enclosure **shall** be free of burrs, sharp edges or sharp projections that can cause injury or damage cable insulation.

13 MAIN DISTRIBUTION FRAME (MDF)

13.1 Application

An MDF may be used to connect a Carrier's twisted pair Lead-In Cabling at any type of Premises. MDFs are not defined for connection of a Carrier's coaxial or optical fibre Cabling — but an MDF may include such connections on the Customer side of the MDF (i.e. for connection of Customer Cabling to other Customer Cabling).

The MDF is generally the Network Boundary for Lines Connected to it. It is normally installed by the Customer's Cabling Provider, but the lead-in connection modules form part of the Telecommunications Network and are usually supplied, installed and maintained by the Carrier or Carriage Service Provider.

Note: Refer to Appendix J for more information about the Network Boundary and the MDF.

13.2 General

An MDF **shall**—

- (a) comply with the applicable requirements of Section 12 in addition to this section; and
- (b) be structurally robust.

13.3 Location

An MDF—

- (a) should be located at the same Building as the End-User;
- (b) should be located near the main or first electrical switchboard at the Building to enable earthing/bonding of surge suppression devices within the conductor length limits described in Note 3 to Clause 20.21.1;
- (c) where located inside the Building, **shall** be installed in a position free from the ingress of dust and moisture and not subject to damp and/or humid conditions; and
- (d) **shall** be securely attached to a permanent building element such as a wall, floor or column.

Note: The proposed location of the MDF should be discussed with the Carrier prior to installation.

13.4 Prohibited locations

An MDF **shall not** be installed in any of the following locations:

- (a) Any room containing washing, bathing, shower or toilet amenities.
- (b) A boiler, plant or machine room.
- (c) Any area subject to corrosive fumes or fluids.
- (d) A fire escape stairway.
- (e) Within the spray zone of an automatic sprinkler, unless—
 - (i) the MDF is provided with a shield to prevent water falling on it;
 - (ii) all sprinkler heads which could project water on to the MDF are provided with suitable deflectors; or
 - (iii) the sprinkler heads are of the dry type.
- (f) Within any restricted zone described in Clause 7.2.2.
- (g) Within a cupboard containing a fire hose reel.
- (h) Within a fire control room
- (i) Below an electrical meter panel.

13.5 Security

An MDF, or Enclosure in which it is located, **shall** have provision for securing with a key, lock or tool.

Note 1: For the purpose of this Clause, an Enclosure includes a closet or room provided for the express purpose of housing the MDF, in which case the closet/room door is to have provision for securing with a key, lock or tool if the MDF does not.

Note 2: The Building owner, manager or occupant is responsible for the security of the MDF. The MDF should be adequately secured against vandalism and access by children or unauthorised persons but reasonable access should be given to Carriers, Carriage Service Providers and Cabling Providers, as required.

13.6 Access clearances

13.6.1 General

Adequate space **shall** be provided around an MDF where persons are to pass to enable safe and convenient access to the MDF and ready escape from the vicinity under emergency conditions.

Note: Appendix D describes recommended access clearances that are deemed to be 'adequate space' for the purpose of this Clause to avoid a dispute with a Carrier or Carriage Service Provider.

13.6.2 Building structure, contents, fittings and fixtures

An MDF **shall** be located so that the access to it is not obstructed by the structure or contents of the Building or by fittings and fixtures within the Building.

13.6.3 Fixed electrical switchboard or meter panel

An MDF **shall** have a frontal access clearance from a fixed electrical switchboard or meter panel of not less than 1000 mm or 600 mm from the swing arc of a door or hinged panel.

[Source: AS/NZS 3000:2019 Clause 2.10.2]

13.7 Height

13.7.1 Highest terminal or socket

The highest terminal or Socket of a wall-mounted MDF **shall not** be greater than 1800 mm above finished ground, floor, or permanent work platform level.

Note: This is to avoid the need for ladder access under variable ground conditions (outdoor MDF) or under variable room conditions (indoor MDF). A freestanding (floor-mounted) MDF would normally be located in a dedicated MDF room or equipment room with permanent access arrangements (e.g. a ladder) and no height restrictions need apply in such cases.

13.7.2 Lowest terminal or socket

13.7.2.1 Outdoor MDF

The lowest terminal or Socket of an outdoor MDF **shall not** be less than 350 mm above finished ground, floor, or permanent work platform level.

Note: This is to allow for variable ground conditions in outdoor situations and also clearance for splashing water (rain or hosing of paths, gardens or lawns).

13.7.2.2 Indoor MDF

The lowest terminal or Socket of an indoor MDF should not be less than 350 mm above finished ground, floor, or permanent work platform level.

Note: This minimum height is recommended to provide clearance for floor cleaning implements and easy access to the terminals or Sockets by any person required to work on the MDF.

13.8 Exit from the MDF room

The Cabling Provider **shall not** install an MDF within any room-

- (a) that requires the use of a tool, key, card, number pad or the like to exit the room; or

- (b) where exit or egress from the room is obstructed by the structure or contents of the Building or by fittings and fixtures within the Building.

Note 1: For personal safety reasons, a Cabling Provider should not perform Cabling Work in such a room.

Note 2: Where an existing MDF is located in such a room, the Cabling Provider should report the condition to the Building owner or manager for rectification.

13.9 Illumination

An MDF **shall** be provided with adequate lighting.

Note: A light intensity of 500 lux at a height of 1 m above ground or floor level is considered to be adequate lighting.

13.10 Inbuilt MDF compartment

Where an MDF Enclosure forms an integral part of the Building construction, a minimum clearance of 30 mm **shall** be provided between the Carrier side termination modules and the inside face of the front cover or door of the Enclosure in the fully closed position.

Note 1: This is to provide space for fitting of surge suppression on the Carrier's modules.

Note 2: Refer to Figure J18 of Appendix J for an explanation of the expression 'Carrier side'.

13.11 Carriers' terminations

The frame of an MDF **shall** be capable of mounting the Carrier's standard termination modules on the Carrier side.

Note 1: The termination modules on the Carrier side are normally supplied and installed by the Carrier.

Note 2: Refer to Figure J18 of Appendix J for an explanation of the expression 'Carrier side'.

13.12 Marking

An MDF **shall** be clearly marked as follows:

- (a) The vertical columns of jumperable terminations ('verticals') **shall** be alphabetically indicated, from left to right, omitting the letters 'I' and 'O'.
- (b) The range of jumperable terminations within each vertical **shall** be indicated numerically in ascending order from the lowest module position (unless clearly labelled otherwise), starting from numeral '1'.

Note: A partially equipped MDF should be marked so as to allow expansion without the need to redesignate verticals or renumber existing terminations.

13.13 Cross-connections

13.13.1 Connection on the carrier side of the MDF

A Cabling Provider is deemed to be authorised by a Carrier to make a connection on the Carrier side of the MDF if, and only if, a pair on the Carrier side has been tagged, labelled, recorded or otherwise specified by the Carrier for the Customer service that is to be Connected.

Note 1: For safety, security and privacy reasons, the use of Patch Cords in MDFs is not generally supported by Carriers.

Note 2: Refer to Figure J18 of Appendix J for an explanation of the expression 'Carrier side'.

13.13.2 Connection on the customer side of the MDF

A Cabling Provider may make or alter any connection on the Customer side of the MDF.

Note: Refer to Figure J18 of Appendix J for an explanation of the expression 'Customer side'.

13.13.3 Removal of 'dead' jumpers

A Cabling Provider is deemed to be authorised by a Carrier to remove a redundant Cross-Connection from the Carrier side of the MDF if all reasonable steps have been taken to ensure a working service is not inadvertently disconnected.

Note: Refer to Figure J18 of Appendix J for an explanation of the expression 'Carrier side'.

13.13.4 Miscellaneous

When making or removing cross connections at an MDF, the Cabling Provider **shall**—

- (a) use the correct terminating tool;
- (b) enter or adjust the service details in the MDF records or provide the relevant details to the Building owner/manager where a secure Cable distribution record system is maintained; and
- (c) reinstate any Cabling components removed if accessing the Carrier side of the MDF, including any surge suppressors or covers.

14 NETWORK TERMINATION DEVICE (NTD)

14.1 Application

An NTD may be used by a Carrier to connect twisted pair, coaxial or optical fibre Lead-In Cabling at any type of Premises.

Note: The NTD is normally installed by the Carrier as part of the Carrier's network and is outside the scope of this Standard except for connection of Customer Cabling to the NTD. A Carrier may choose to use an NTD dependent on the circumstances. Contact the relevant Carrier for more information.

14.2 Connection on the customer side of the NTD

In Customer Premises where a Carrier's Lead-In Cabling terminates on an NTD, a Cabling Provider is authorised by the Carrier to connect Customer Cabling to the connectors on the Customer side of the NTD whether or not a Line has been tagged, labelled, recorded or otherwise specified by the Carrier for that Customer service.

Note: Refer to Figure J19 of Appendix J for an explanation of the expression 'Customer side'.

14.3 Connection on the carrier side of the NTD

Apart from testing activities described in Clause 14.4, a Cabling Provider **shall not** make or alter any connection on the Carrier side of the NTD unless the Cabling Provider has been authorised in writing by the Carrier to do so.

Note: Refer to Figure J19 of Appendix J for an explanation of the expression 'Carrier side'.

14.4 Testing

Where the NTD incorporates a Socket, disconnect contact or removable link to enable isolation or testing of the Line by a Cabling Provider:

- (a) The Cabling Provider is authorised by the Carrier to use the Socket, disconnect contact or removable link for isolation or testing purposes, in accordance with the NTD instructions.
- (b) Where isolation or testing necessitates removal of a component (e.g. a link, Plug or surge suppressor), the Cabling Provider **shall** reinstate the component at the completion of testing unless it is faulty and its reinstatement would prevent the safe or proper functioning of a Carriage Service or a Telecommunications Network.
- (c) Where the Cabling Provider is prevented from reinstating a component in accordance with Item (b), the Cabling Provider **shall** inform the Carrier of the fault as soon as reasonably practical.

Note: Some NTD designs may support testing of the Line by the Customer (e.g. using a standard telephone), in which case the NTD will be appropriately labelled.

15 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLETS

15.1 Socket types

The telecommunications Sockets in common use in Australia for connection of Customer Equipment to twisted pair Cables are described in Appendix C.

Note: In general, 8-position modular Sockets are recommended for new Cabling Work.

15.2 Protection against contact with live parts of sockets

15.2.1 Access to ES3 circuits

A Socket that carries or is intended to carry an ES3 circuit **shall** be—

- (a) provided with mechanical protection that prevents access to live parts by a person who is not doing Cabling Work; or
- (b) installed in a position out of Arm's Reach.

15.2.2 Premises frequented by small children

A Socket located in Premises frequented by small children (e.g. a kindergarten or child care centre), capable of carrying an ES1 or ES2 circuit, with contacts that may be touched by a finger, should be—

- (a) provided with mechanical protection that prevents access to live parts by a person who is not doing Cabling Work; or
- (b) installed in a position out of reach of small children.

Note: A Cord Connected to a Telecommunications Outlet but not Connected to Customer Equipment also represents a hazard to small children who may put the Plug in their mouth and suffer an electric shock, particularly in earthed situations (e.g. while in contact with an earthed object when sitting on a concrete floor).

15.3 Damp locations

15.3.1 Restricted zones

A Telecommunications Outlet **shall not** be installed in any restricted zone described in Clause 7.2.2.

Note 1: Where it is necessary to install Customer Equipment within a restricted zone, the Customer Equipment should be a type that is not Connected via a Telecommunications Outlet, or the outlet should be located outside the restricted zone. The Customer Equipment should be designed and constructed for the location and conditions of use (refer to Clause 7.2.3).

Note 2: Any Socket that is an integral part of Customer Equipment does not constitute part of a Telecommunications Outlet.

15.3.2 Outside restricted zones

A Telecommunications Outlet installed in a Damp Location, but outside a restricted zone, **shall** be installed in such a way as to minimise the ingress of moisture.

15.4 First socket

15.4.1 Application

Where a Carriage Service is supplied to an End-User in a Building by means of a Line (Cable) that enters the Building and the Line does not connect to an MDF or an NTD, the Socket of the first Telecommunications Outlet Connected to the Line, after the Building Entry Point (i.e. inside the Building), is generally the Network Boundary for that Line.

Note 1: The First Socket is part of the Telecommunications Network and is usually supplied, installed and maintained by the Carrier or Carriage Service Provider.

Note 2: Refer to Appendix J for more information about the Network Boundary and the First Socket.

15.4.2 Connection of customer cabling

15.4.2.1 Twisted pair cabling

In Customer Premises where a Carrier's twisted pair Lead-In Cabling terminates on the First Socket in the Building (i.e. there is no MDF or NTD), a Cabling Provider may connect Customer Cabling—

- (a) to the terminal strip of the First Socket; or
- (b) at any point on the Customer side of the terminal strip described in Item (a), e.g. at any subsequent Socket.

Note: Where insulation displacement connectors are used at the First Socket, the Customer Cable conductors should be Connected on separate fines (slots) to those used to connect the lead-in Cable conductors.

15.4.2.2 Coaxial or optical fibre cabling

In Customer Premises where a Carrier's coaxial or optical fibre Lead-In Cabling terminates on the First Socket in the Building (i.e. there is no NTD), a Cabling Provider **shall not** connect Customer Cabling to any point other than the First Socket via a mating Plug.

15.4.2.3 Obsolete hard-wired telephone

In Customer Premises where a Carrier's twisted pair Lead-In Cabling terminates on a telephone without a Socket (e.g. an obsolete fixed wall phone), a Cabling Provider may connect Customer Cabling to the terminals of the telephone connection strip or block.

15.4.2.4 Intermediate devices

A Cabling Provider **shall not** connect Cabling to any lead-in Cable connection device or equipment other than those described in Clauses 15.4.2.1, 15.4.2.2 and 15.4.2.3 unless the Cabling Provider has been authorised in writing by the Carrier to do so.

15.5 Movable TOs

15.5.1 Installation arrangements for movable TOs

A TO that is movable **shall** be installed as either—

- (a) a pendant Socket; or
- (b) a Socket fixed to a movable part which is permanently mechanically connected to—
 - (i) a fixed structure; or
 - (ii) an object which cannot be readily moved.

Note: An example of Item (b)(i) could be a mechanical arm fixed to a ceiling. An example of Item (b)(ii) could be a movable part of a desk, where the main part of the desk cannot readily be moved.

15.5.2 Enclosures for movable TOs

A TO that can be moved directly by an Ordinary Person **shall** be fixed in an Enclosure.

15.5.3 Mechanical connectivity

The mechanical connectivity described in Clause 15.5.1(b) **shall**—

- (a) ensure a mechanically-guided restricted range of movement so that the part that the TO is fixed to cannot be moved or twisted freely in all directions;
- (b) ensure movement in only a controlled and predictable manner; and
- (c) be robust.

Note: This is to disallow trivial mechanical restraints such as linking two parts with a loose rope or chain, or using the feeder Cable as a tether.

15.6 Pendant TOs

15.6.1 Suspension arrangements for pendant TOs

A pendant TO **shall** be suspended from a fixed structure by a sturdy arrangement such as—

- (a) a chain;
- (b) stranded-flexible steel wire; or

(c) a suitable tubular Enclosure.

15.6.2 Cable terminating on a pendant TO

Cable terminating on a pendant TO **shall** be—

- (a) attached to the suspension arrangement at points—
 - (i) close to the top of the suspension arrangement;
 - (ii) at regular intervals along the suspension arrangement;
and
 - (iii) close to the TO; or
- (b) be enclosed within the suspension arrangement at the points in Item (a).

Note: Cables should be held firmly to the support system without undue pressure being exerted on Cable sheaths to the point of Cable deformation.

16 INDOOR CABLING

16.1 Cable flammability

Customer Cable installed within a Building should meet Clause 5.6.4 of AS/CA S008, but other Cable may be installed in this situation if it is required for compliance with this Standard.

Note 1: There is no requirement in this Standard to change the Cable type where an underground or aerial Cable enters a Building. However, any Cable used within the Building past the first Cable connection point (e.g. Distributor) should meet Clause 5.6.4 of AS/CA S008 unless that Cable will exit the Building as Outdoor Cabling (e.g. run underground or aerial to another Building) or the use of underground type Cable is required by Clause 16.8.

Note 2: The Building Code contains information about how Buildings may be designed to inhibit the propagation of fire.

16.2 Fire stopping

16.2.1 General

Where—

- (a) Cabling is installed through an opening in a building element; and
- (b) the building element is likely to be a Fire Compartment Boundary Element;

the Cabling Provider **shall** ensure that the opening is fire stopped to perform at a fire resistance level not less than the fire resistance level that the building element is likely to be intended to perform at as a fire safety element of the Building, unless a person authorised by the building owner states in writing that the opening is to be fire stopped by another person.

Note 1: An authorised person could be the building owner, a property manager, a builder or another person.

Note 2: A building owner or their representative may provide information as to which Building element(s) should require fire stopping.

Note 3: Cablers are accountable for any penetrations they make that reduce the integrity of the fire-resisting Building element.

Note 4: The requirements of the Building Code may apply.

16.2.2 Materials

Where another person has not taken written responsibility for fire stopping of an opening under Clause 16.2.1, the Cabling Provider **shall** ensure that the fire stopping materials are selected and installed such that the fire stopping of the opening is suitable for—

- (a) the building element;
- (b) the type, size and orientation of the opening; and

- (c) the services passing through it.

Note: The installation of fire-stopping materials should be performed by a Skilled Person.

16.3 Separation from LV power cables

16.3.1 General

A Customer Cable that contains Electrically Conductive Elements, other than an undercarpet Cable, **shall** be permanently separated from any LV Power Cable by one of the following methods:

- (a) A minimum distance of 50 mm.
- (b) Subject to the requirements of Clause 16.3.2, a barrier of durable insulating material or metal.
- (c) A timber or metal stud, nogging, joist, bearer or rafter of any thickness.

Note 1: Compliance with Item (b) may be achieved by the Enclosure of either the Customer Cable or the LV Cable in Conduit.

Note 2: Neither the metallic shield of a shielded Cable nor the sheath of a double-insulated Cable qualifies as a barrier for the purpose of Item (b).

Note 3: It is not a requirement of this Standard for a metallic barrier to be earthed in this case unless it is also used to separate Customer Cable terminations and LV Power terminations (refer to Clause 9.1.2.3). However, in certain circumstances the barrier may be required to be earthed by the installer of the LV Power Cable as a requirement of AS/NZS 3000.

Note 4: A flexible Customer Equipment Cord is not required to be separated from an electrical appliance Cord or fixed LV Power Cable unless the Customer Equipment Cord is installed as fixed or concealed Cabling.

Note 5: Spatial or mechanical separation is necessary for safety purposes to minimise the risk of coincident insulation damage to both the Customer Cable and the LV Power Cable caused by excessive heat, abrasion, rodents or penetration by nails or screws.

16.3.2 Cabling in building framework

A Customer Cable that contains Electrically Conductive Elements **shall not** pass through the same hole as an LV Power Cable if the hole is within 50 mm of any securing face of Building framework (e.g. a stud, nogging, joist, rafter, bearer, plate, or batten) whether or not there is a barrier provided between the Cables.

Note 1: The separation requirements in Clause 16.3.1 still apply.

- 16.3.3 Cables in common trunking or a common duct or enclosure
Customer Cable that contains Electrically Conductive Elements and which shares Trunking, a Duct or an Enclosure with an LV Power Cable **shall** be installed in a separate channel or compartment of the common Trunking, Duct or Enclosure such that the channel or compartment is separated by a fixed and continuous barrier complying with Item 16.3.1 (b), unless in the case of an Enclosure containing Cable terminations, the installation complies with the three conditions listed in Items 9.1.2.3 (a) to (c).

Note 1: The separation requirements in Clause 16.3.1 still apply.

Note 2: Common Trunking or a common Duct may include a skirting Duct, floor Duct or service column.

Note 3: Breaks are permissible in the barrier at intersections of modular office furniture including abutments to service columns (due to assembly processes) where these can be opened for inspection, as long as Cables do not cross into other channels and have fixings fitted where required to maintain separation at changes in direction of any Cabling in the Trunking, Duct or Enclosure.

16.3.4 Undercarpet cabling

Any undercarpet Customer Cable that contains Electrically Conductive Elements—

- (a) **shall** be separated for its entire length from any LV Power Cable by a minimum distance of 50 mm; or
- (b) where the Customer Cable crosses an undercarpet power Cable and a separation distance of 50 mm cannot be maintained, the Customer Cable—
 - (i) **shall** cross above the undercarpet power Cable at right angles; and
 - (ii) **shall** be separated from the power Cable by a rigid metallic barrier that is earthed in accordance with Clause 20.17 and which extends at least 25 mm beyond the Cable sheaths of both the Customer Cable and the power Cable.

16.4 Separation from HV circuits

16.4.1 Single-core cables

A Customer Cable that contains Electrically Conductive Elements and which runs alongside or crosses a single-core Cable carrying an HV circuit **shall** be separated for its entire length from the HV single-core Cable by a distance of at least 450 mm whether or not there is an interposing barrier.

16.4.2 Multi-core cables

A Customer Cable that contains Electrically Conductive Elements and which runs alongside or crosses a multi-core Cable carrying an

HV circuit **shall** be separated for its entire length from the HV multi-core Cable by—

- (a) a distance of not less than 300 mm; or
- (b) a distance of not less than 150 mm where there is an interposing barrier that—
 - (i) is of such dimensions that at every point the shortest path between the Customer Cable and the multi-core HV Cable around the barrier is at least 175 mm measured from the outside of the Cable sheaths; and
 - (ii) is made of either durable insulating material or metal earthed in accordance with Clause 20.17.

Note: Compliance with Item (b) may be achieved by the Enclosure of either the Customer Cable or the HV Cable in Conduit.

16.5 Prohibited use of flame-propagating conduit

Conduit and fittings that are not classified as non-flame propagating, in accordance with AS/NZS 2053.1, **shall not** be used in any of the following locations:

- (a) A lift or hoist shaft.
- (b) A lift motor room.
- (c) A fire-isolated exit (e.g. fire escape stairway).
- (d) A location where the ambient temperature is in excess of 60° C.

Note: Clause 8.3 also applies to any Conduit used for the Customer Cabling.

16.6 Cabling in lift and hoist shafts and for travelling cranes

16.6.1 Permanently fixed cables

A permanently fixed Customer Cable that is installed in a lift or hoist shaft **shall** —

- (a) meet the requirements of AS 1735.2 and AS/CA S008; and
- (b) be separated from other services in accordance with Clauses 16.3 and 16.4 unless an appropriate Line Isolation Device is fitted to each end of the telecommunications circuit.

Note: An appropriate isolating device is Carrier equipment or Customer Equipment that meets the requirements of AS/NZS 62368.1 for an ES1 or ES2 circuit interface, as applicable to the circumstances. Examples are a modem, LAN switch or a Line Isolation Device.

16.6.2 Travelling cables

A telecommunications circuit **shall not** be Connected to a travelling Cable associated with a lift cabin, hoist basket or travelling crane unless one of the following conditions are met:

- (a) The Cable meets the applicable requirements of AS/CA S008.
- (b) An appropriate Line Isolation Device is fitted to each end of the telecommunications circuit.
- (c) An appropriate Line Isolation Device is fitted at one end, and an appropriate lift telephone is fitted at the other end, of the telecommunications circuit.

Note: An appropriate isolating device or lift phone is Carrier equipment or Customer Equipment that meets the requirements of AS/NZS 62368.1 for an ES1 or ES2 circuit interface, as applicable to the circumstances. Examples are a modem, LAN switch or a Line Isolation Device.

16.7 Cabling over or under floor covering

16.7.1 Physical protection

Where Cabling other than a flexible equipment connecting Cord is run on the surface of carpet or other floor material, it **shall** be protected by a suitable covering strip or by Enclosure in Conduit or Trunking.

Note 1: Also refer to Clause 5.1.

16.7.2 Separation from power cabling

An undercarpet Cable **shall** be separated from any LV Power Cable in accordance with Clause 16.3.4.

16.8 Cables in floor conduit or duct

A Cable that is installed in floor Conduit or Duct where part or all of the Cable is immersed or is likely to be immersed in water within the Conduit or Duct (e.g. as a result of condensation, seepage through cracks/joints, rain ingress or the operational use of water in the vicinity), **shall** meet the water penetration requirements of AS/CA S008 for Underground Cable as described in Clause 18.4.

Note: Water may enter floor Conduits during construction activities and remain in situ for the lifespan of the Conduit.

17 OUTDOOR CABLING – GENERAL

17.1 Protection rating

A Telecommunications Outlet or any other Customer Equipment installed in a location exposed to the weather or to damp conditions **shall—**

- (a) have a minimum degree of protection against the entry of water of IPX3 of AS 60529 or be enclosed in an Enclosure that has a minimum degree of protection of IPX3; and
- (b) be installed in such a way that a minimum degree of protection of IPX3 is maintained at all times.

17.2 Cabling between premises

A Cabling Provider **shall** install any Cabling between separate Premises in accordance with the relevant requirements of this Standard.

Note 1: The permission of the relevant local authority, or the owner of any third-party property traversed by the Cabling, is required.

Note 2: The Cabling Provider is not entitled to use a Carrier's or other person's Conduits, pits or access holes without their express permission.

Note 3: The Dial Before You Dig (DBYD) 'free call service' (telephone 1100 or visit the DBYD website at 1100.com.au) should be contacted for information about any underground services that may be in the vicinity if any earth breaking activity is contemplated.

Note 4: Details of such Cabling should be recorded on suitable Cabling plans and in relevant Cable distribution records.

17.3 Cabling between buildings

17.3.1 General

Where equipment is to be interconnected between separate Buildings, the connection may be made using one of the following methods—

- (a) Cabling that does not contain Electrically Conductive Elements (e.g. optical fibre Cable with non-metallic strength member).
- (b) Wireless technology.
- (c) Coaxial Cabling, provided the requirements in Clause 17.3.2. are met.
- (d) Paired conductors, including twisted pairs, that are either shielded or unshielded, provided the requirements in Clause 17.3.3 are met.

17.3.2 Coaxial cabling

Where equipment is to be interconnected between separate Buildings using coaxial Cabling the coaxial Cable **shall** be—

- (a) Connected to the Indoor Cabling via an isolator that provides a minimum isolation of 3 kV r.m.s. and 7 kV impulse; and
- (b) the outer conductor of the coaxial Cable **shall** be earthed on the Outdoor Cabling side of the isolator in accordance with Clause 20.18.4.

17.3.3 Paired conductors

Equipment **shall not** be interconnected between separate Buildings using paired conductors, including twisted pairs, that are either shielded or unshielded, where the manufacturer or supplier of the equipment to which the Cabling is intended to be Connected has indicated either of the following—

- (a) only 'internal Cabling' (Indoor Cabling) is to be Connected to the equipment or an equipment Port; or
- (b) 'external Cabling' (Outdoor Cabling) is not to be Connected to the equipment or an equipment Port.

Note 1: In the case of Items (a) or (b), the Cabling Provider is precluded by Clause 5.2 (b) from using twisted pair Cabling between the Buildings to interconnect the equipment.

Note 2: Most Ethernet equipment, Ethernet Ports and IP-based (e.g. VOIP) service Ports are classified as 'internal' and are not designed to be Connected to Outdoor Cabling.

Note 3: An 'external' equipment Port should, as a minimum, comply with the ES1 or ES2 requirements of Clauses 5.4.10 and 5.4.11 of AS/NZS 62368.1 for connection to a Telecommunications Network and should also comply with the 'enhanced' requirements of Table 2 of ITU-T Recommendation K.21.

Note 4: Refer to Clause 10.1 for about the assessment of the need for surge suppression where equipment is to be interconnected between separate Buildings using paired conductors.

Note 5: Refer to Clause 10.2 for about the installation of surge suppression where the risk of injury to the End-User is assessed as high under Clause 10.1.

Note 6: Refer to Note 3 to Clause 10.2 which recommends that for surge suppression to be effective the Cabling be Connected to equipment or an equipment Port that is classified as:
(a) 'external', or
(b) 'internal', in which case the Cabling should only be Connected via a suitable Line Isolation Device.

Note 7: When selecting a suitable Line Isolation Device, consideration should be given to matching the system impedance and highest upper working frequency.

17.3.4 Inter-building cabling within a sheltered structure

Cabling which is installed in a service tunnel, covered walkway, aboveground Trunking system or other sheltered structure between Buildings may be treated as Indoor Cabling in which case the requirements of Clauses 17.3.1, 17.4 and 17.5 **shall** be met.

17.4 Exposure to UV radiation (sunlight)

Where any outdoor Cable or equipment is installed in a location exposed to direct sunlight—

- (a) the exposed parts of the Cable or equipment **shall** be manufactured of UV resistant material; or
- (b) the Cable or equipment **shall** be mechanically protected from exposure to UV radiation by suitable means.

Note: It may be necessary to confirm the UV resistant properties of a product with the supplier or manufacturer of the product.

17.5 Outdoor surface cabling

Outdoor surface Cabling, including Cabling installed in Trunking, troughs or trays at or above ground level—

- (a) **shall** be separated from LV Power Cables and HV circuits in accordance with Clauses 16.3 and 16.4;
- (b) **shall** comply with the relevant requirements of Section 8; and
- (c) if part or all of a Cable is immersed or is likely to be immersed in water within surface Conduit, Duct, Trunking, trough or tray that is not adequately drained, the Cable **shall** meet the water penetration requirements of AS/CA S008 for Underground Cable as described in Clause 18.4.

Note: Cables may experience water immersion from condensation build-up, if installed within surface Duct or Trunking that passes from outdoors to indoors with a notable temperature variant.

17.6 Outdoor antennas

Where an outdoor radio, wireless ('Wi-Fi') or satellite antenna (including any active/powered antenna referred to as an 'Outdoor Unit' or 'ODU') is Connected to Customer Cabling, the following should be met:

- (a) To minimise static electricity charge and for lightning protection purposes, the antenna metal support, mast and boom (as applicable) should be earthed in accordance with Clause 20.19.

Note: The lightning protection is limited to shunting induced current from a nearby lightning discharge to earth and will not provide effective protection against a direct lightning strike.

- (b) In areas of high lightning activity, if the highest extremity of any part of the antenna, including the Cabling Connected to it, is less than 2 m below the apex of the roof or more than 1.5 m from the Building, the following should be met:
 - (i) An earthing conductor installed in accordance with Item (a) should have a cross-sectional area of at least 6 mm² and should be run by the most direct route to a suitable Equipotential Bonding point in accordance with AS/NZS 1768.
 - (ii) If the Cable feed from the antenna is coaxial Cable, the coaxial Cable should be Connected to the indoor equipment via an isolator that provides a minimum isolation of 3 kV r.m.s. and 7 kV impulse, and the outer conductor of the coaxial Cable should be earthed on the antenna side of the isolator to the same Equipotential Bonding point described in Item (b)(i) via an earthing conductor with a cross-sectional area of at least 6 mm².
 - (iii) If the Cable feed from the antenna is twisted pair Cable, the Cable should be shielded and the shield should be earthed to the same Equipotential Bonding point described in Item (b)(i) via an earthing conductor with a cross-sectional area of at least 6 mm².
- (c) Any antenna mast having a free length exceeding 3 m, other than those of the self-supporting type, should be stabilised by the use of three or more stay wires or rods.
- (d) To reduce the severity of any atmospheric (lightning) discharge coming down the Cable feed from the antenna to the equipment, an inductive loop (typically 3 turns of Cable approximately 200 mm in diameter) should be formed in the outdoor portion of the Cable feed (e.g. near the antenna connection).

18 UNDERGROUND CABLING

18.1 Pits and access holes

18.1.1 Identification and marking

A pit or access hole **shall** be legibly and permanently labelled on the cover to distinguish it from a pit or access hole of another service, except in a case where the pit or access hole is provided for another service and is traversed by Customer Cabling in accordance with Clause 18.1.5.

Note 1: In the context of underground communications Cabling, the terms pit and access hole refer to in-ground chambers which are used to haul, joint and house Underground Cables. These chambers may be factory made or constructed on site. The cover marking requirement is usually met by fitting a cover which has been marked 'Comms' or 'Communications' by the manufacturer. If a new cover does not have this marking, the marking should be applied by mechanically fixing an engraved metal plate to the cover.

Note 2: Before entering a pit or access hole, the Cabling Provider should test it for the presence of dangerous gases and check for other hazards (e.g. snakes, spiders, syringes).

18.1.2 Areas intended to be used by vehicles

A pit or access hole **shall not** be positioned in a driveway, car parking area, or other area intended to be used by vehicles, unless the pit or access hole is:

- (a) protected by suitable guards or barriers that prevent passage of vehicles to the area containing the pit or access hole; or
- (b) installed or constructed in a manner strong enough to withstand the type of foreseeable traffic in the area.

18.1.3 Heavy loads

A pit or access hole positioned in a location that is likely to be subjected to heavy loads (e.g. traversed by heavy vehicles) **shall** be—

- (a) protected by suitable guards or barriers that prevent passage of the loads to the area containing the pit or access hole; or
- (b) installed or constructed in accordance with a design certified by a Registered Structural Engineer as suitable to withstand the foreseeable types of heavy load.

18.1.4 Conduit and cable entry to pits or access holes

18.1.4.1 General

Conduit or Cable should only enter the ends (short sides) of any pit or access hole, in order to prevent bend radius compromise and for ease of hauling.

18.1.4.2 Conduits

Any hole provided for Conduit entry in a pit or access hole should be—

- (a) spaced at least 50 mm above the inside bottom surface of the pit or access hole to form a siltation trap (in the pit base) to prevent silt and sludge entering the Conduit and to enable the pit or access hole to be cleared of silt and contaminants when necessary;
- (b) spaced at least 25 mm away from any other Conduit entry hole;
- (c) the correct size to ensure a firm Conduit fit to minimise entry of contaminants, vermin and silt into the pit or access hole;
- (d) fitted with a suitable bush (flange) inserted from the inside of the pit or access hole except in—
 - (i) highly reactive soils where allowance should be made for longitudinal movement of the Conduit by extending the Conduit at least 50 mm, but no more than 100 mm, into the pit or access hole; or
 - (ii) areas where ants or termites are particularly aggressive, in which case any Conduit that runs to a Building should be extended at least 50 mm, but no more than 100 mm, into the pit or access hole to allow the application of a suitable ant-proof sock; and
- (e) plugged or sealed by suitable means to prevent siltation of the pit if the hole is not used for Conduit entry.

Note: Fill around a pit or access hole can gradually migrate into the pit or access hole if there is a gap or a hole in the wall. This can cause the surface around the pit or access hole to sink or collapse, forming a trip hazard or pothole or create an entry point for vermin such as snakes, spiders and ants. Similar displacement can occur where a Conduit end is left uncapped in the ground or where an underground Conduit break is left unrepaired. Plant roots may also enter underground ducting through such openings.

18.1.4.3 Cables

Where a Cable is directly buried in the ground without Conduit—

- (a) the Cable should be installed in Conduit for at least 300 mm before entering a pit or access hole to protect the Cable sheath where it enters the pit or access hole;
- (b) the Conduit described in Item (a) should be installed in accordance with Clause 18.1.4.2; and
- (c) the end of the Conduit which does not enter the pit or access hole should be plugged or sealed in the ground to prevent siltation of the pit via the Conduit.

18.1.4.4 Building entry conduit

A Conduit entering a Building from a pit or access hole **shall** be appropriately installed or plugged within the pit or access hole to inhibit the entry of contaminants, fluid, gas, insects or vermin into the Building.

18.1.4.5 Drainage of pits and access holes

Where practicable, pits and access holes should be drained as follows:

- (a) Conduits running between pits or access holes should not be plugged or sealed to allow natural drainage of water and contaminants to the lowest pit or access hole.

Note: Any Conduit running downhill to a pit or access hole located next to a Building should be plugged or sealed to minimise the risk of flooding the Building unless the pit next to the Building is suitably drained. Any Conduit entering a Building is required by Clause 18.1.4.4 to be plugged or sealed within the pit or access hole.

- (b) Subject to the requirements of any environmental regulations, the lowest pit or access hole should be drained to a lower drainage point such as the back of a roadway kerb, a stormwater drain or a natural watercourse.

18.1.5 Sharing with LV or HV power

A Customer Cable or joint **shall not** be installed in the same pit or access hole as an LV or HV Power Cable or joint except for—

- (a) traversing of the pit or access hole by either the power Cable or the Customer Cable, which **shall** be—
 - (i) enclosed in a continuous run of sealed, insulating Conduit that is suitably identified and that extends beyond the outer extremities of the pit or access hole; and
 - (ii) separated within the pit or access hole from the other service in accordance with Clause 16.3 or 16.4, as applicable; or
- (b) traversing of an LV or an HV pit or access hole by a Customer Cable that does not contain Electrically Conductive Elements and that is installed in a Conduit with a power Cable in accordance with Item 8.3.1(c).

Note 1: Customer Cabling may share a pit or access hole with ELV Cable. However, it is recommended that the ELV Cable or the pit or access hole be labelled or marked with the working voltage carried by the ELV Cable.

Note 2: Refer to Clause 8.3.3.2 for sharing of pits and access holes with Cables carrying ES3 circuits.

18.1.6 HV sites

Any pit or access hole installed in or near an HV Site **shall** comply with Clause 6.1.

18.1.7 Information about pit covers and access hole covers

Where the cover of a pit or access hole is not intended to be operated using the typical Australian telecommunications pit key, the Cabling Provider who installs the cover should provide the owner or manager of the pit or access hole with—

- (a) a record of the location and installed appearance of the cover; and
- (b) illustrated instructions for operating and maintaining the cover and any parts or mechanisms associated with it.

Note 1: The pit cover or access hole cover includes any part which mates with it and any associated locking mechanism other than a portable tool.

Note 2: The typical telecommunications pit key is used to open most Carrier owned pits and access holes in Australia.

18.2 Pillars and cabinets

18.2.1 Locking in public areas

A pillar or cabinet installed in a public place (e.g. footway, roadway, park) **shall** have a lock installed.

Note: The permission of the relevant local authority is required to install a pillar or a cabinet in a public place.

18.2.2 HV sites

Any pillar or cabinet installed in or near an HV Site **shall** comply with Clause 6.1.

18.3 Conduit and marking tape

18.3.1 Public footways and roadways

Underground Customer Cable installed under a public footway or roadway **shall** be—

- (a) enclosed in Conduit that meets the requirements of AS/CA S008; or
- (b) covered by a white marking tape which—
 - (i) meets the requirements of AS/NZS 2648.1;
 - (ii) includes lettering to identify the service; and
 - (iii) is installed a minimum of 100 mm above the Cable.

18.3.2 Marking tape

Traceable marker tape with a conductive strip should not be installed in or through EPR hazard zones or HV Sites.

18.3.3 Other locations

Where underground Customer Cable is installed in a location other than a public footway or roadway, it should be installed in accordance with one of the following:

- (a) The Cable is enclosed in Conduit that meets the applicable requirements of AS/CA S008 for underground Conduit.
- (b) The Cable is covered by white marking tape in accordance with Item 18.3.1(b).
- (c) The Cable route is marked at regular intervals (e.g. using Cable marker posts).

18.3.4 Conduit compliance

Any Conduit used for underground Customer Cabling **shall** meet the applicable requirements of AS/CA S008 for underground Conduit unless—

- (a) the Conduit is to be installed as sub-ducting in a larger Conduit that meets the applicable requirements of AS/CA S008 for underground Conduit; or
- (b) otherwise allowed in this Standard.

Note 1: AS/CA S008 requires non-metallic underground Conduit to be marked 'COMMUNICATIONS' and to be coloured white or contain a white stripe.

Note 2: Conduit installed as sub-ducting in a larger Conduit that meets the requirements of AS/CA S008 in accordance with Item (a) need only meet Clauses 5.1 and 8.3.1 (i.e. it should not have misleading markings that may create a safety hazard or be of a prohibited colour).

Note 3: Rigid Conduit should be used for the purpose of drawing in Cables. Flexible or corrugated Conduit is not recommended for this purpose.

18.3.5 Sub-ducting of customer cable in enveloper conduit or pipe

A Customer Cable that contains Electrically Conductive Elements installed in an enveloper Conduit or pipe that is not a prohibited colour, but which may not meet the applicable requirements of AS/CA S008, **shall** be sub-ducted in Conduit that meets the applicable requirements of AS/CA S008 for underground Conduit, through the enveloper Conduit or pipe and any associated pits or access holes.

Note: Enveloper Conduits and pipes are typically used for service crossings under roadways or for common service distribution in some

industrial Premises. Refer to Clause 8.3.3 if the enveloper Conduit or pipe is to be shared with a Hazardous Service.

18.3.6 Conduit integrity

18.3.6.1 General

Conduits installed underground should—

- (a) be designed and installed such that Cables may be drawn through them between access points safely and with minimal stress and without damage to any Conduit or any Cable;
- (b) use rigid (e.g. UPVC or polyethylene) Conduit with an inside diameter no less than 23 mm but which is sized for the type and number of Cables to be drawn in; and
- (c) be provided with a suitable rope or cord for drawing in Cables.

Note: AS/NZS 3084 provides guidance on dimensioning of underground Conduits.

18.3.6.2 Bends

No more than three 90° Conduit bends, or equivalent, should be installed between access points and should be sized in accordance with Table 3.

Note: Underground bends or sweeps should be prefabricated and not formed in the Conduit by the application of heat or a bending tool and should not consist of flexible/corrugated Conduit. However, Conduit may be curved in the ground to a curvature radius of no less than 130 times the nominal inside diameter of the Conduit. Such curves do not count as bends in applying the three-bend limit.

Table 3

Conduit curves, bends and distances between access points

Nominal inside diameter (ID) of Conduit (mm)	Typical actual inside diameter (mm)	Minimum curvature radius (130 x ID) (mm)	Minimum bend radius mid-run (mm)	Minimum bend radius within 500 mm of an access point (mm)	Maximum distance between access points (m)
20	23	2600	300	100	50
50	53	6500	800	300	100
100	105	13000	5000	800	100

Note 1: The Conduit sizes are rounded to the nearest integer and are based on the values listed in AS/NZS 1477 for PN 9 and PN 12 PVC pressure pipes, which are the values used by Carriers for their rigid Conduit.

Note 2: The dimensions of polyethylene "bore pipe" used in underboring may vary.

18.3.6.3 Conduit access points

A Conduit access point may be a pit, an access hole, an above ground Enclosure, or an aboveground Conduit termination point at a Building. The distance between access points should not exceed the relevant distance set out in Table 3.

18.3.6.4 Conduit and bend couplings

All Conduit and bend couplings should be made—

- (a) free of snag points by cutting the end of the Conduit at a right angle to the axis of the Conduit and removing all burrs and sharp edges from within and outside of the Conduit by using a file or scraper; and
- (b) using a solvent adhesive, weld or fitting that is watertight and able to resist significant longitudinal tension or torsion in the Conduit during and after installation.

Note 1: While it is virtually impossible to keep water out of underground Conduit (due to condensation and seepage in pits or access holes), watertight joints are necessary to—

- (a) prevent blockages due to the ingress of water-borne silts;
- (b) prevent damage and blockages due to invasion from plant roots; and
- (c) prevent the ingress of insects (especially ants and termites) that may damage the Cable or use the Conduit as an access corridor to a Building.

Note 2: Tension and torsion may be exerted on Conduit after installation due to soil movement, especially in highly reactive soils.

Note 3: Solvent adhesive should be applied around the whole circumference of the Conduit end to prevent the ingress of water and ants.

Note 4: Solvent adhesive should be cleared from the internal surface of a Conduit or bend. Dried solvent may form a sharp edge or point that could damage a Cable during hauling.

18.4 Cable compliance

A Customer Cable installed underground, whether or not installed in Conduit, other than—

- (a) coaxial Cable;
- (b) a blown fibre tube system or similar system with preinstalled elements, or
- (c) a Special Application Cable,

shall comply with—

- (d) AS/CA S008 Clause 5.6.5 for UV resistance; and
- (e) AS/CA S008 Clause 5.6.8 for water penetration.

Note 1: Underground Cable may be exposed to UV radiation (sunlight) at points where it enters or exits the ground or if a pit or access hole cover is dislodged or damaged for an extended period.

Note 2: Water penetration refers to the effectiveness of a Cable to restrict the longitudinal movement of water or moisture along the core. This requirement is primarily intended to localise any water penetration so as to minimise the adverse effect on Cable performance and to prevent water or moisture leaking into joints and terminations that may cause corrosion problems.

Note 3: Additionally, Cable installed underground should have a high-density compound sheath material (such as polyethylene) that provides an adequate barrier to moisture entry to the Cable core. The addition of a lapped metal tape ('moisture barrier') provides higher protection against moisture permeating through the sheath. Grease, gel or alternatively dry-core technology applying super absorbent polymers (water swellable yarns and tapes) within the core blocks the water entry longitudinally along the Cable.

Note 4: Cable susceptible to ant/termite attack or that is buried directly in the ground without Conduit should be a type that provides additional mechanical protection against abrasion and insects such as a nylon jacket with an optional sacrificial jacket.

Note 5: Not all Cables sold as 'outdoor' or 'indoor/outdoor' Cables meet the water penetration requirements for underground use. Installers should verify with the Cable manufacturer that such a Cable meets the water penetration requirements of AS/CA S008.

Note 6: Optical Fibre Special Application Cable not meeting the UV resistance and water penetration requirements of AS/CA S008 is deemed to be conductive when determining separation from Hazardous Services.

18.5 Blown fibre tube systems or similar

A blown-fibre tube system or similar system with preinstalled elements installed underground **shall**—

- (a) be contiguous between access points;
- (b) have access points appropriately located or sealed to prevent the ingress of moisture; and
- (c) be appropriately installed or plugged when entering a Building to prevent the passage of fluid or gas into the Building from any pit or access hole.

18.6 Depth of cover

18.6.1 Public footways or roadways

Underground Customer Cabling located under a public footway or roadway **shall** be installed at a minimum depth of 450 mm, measured from the finished ground/pavement surface to the top of

the Cable or Conduit, or as otherwise agreed with the relevant local authority.

Note: The permission of the relevant local authority is required to install Customer Cabling in a public footway or roadway.

18.6.2 Places other than public footways or roadways

Underground Customer Cabling in a location other than a public footway or roadway **shall** be installed to a minimum depth of 300 mm, measured from the finished ground/pavement surface to the top of the Cable or Conduit, unless the soil conditions preclude a depth of 300 mm, e.g. solid rock, shale, or crossing another service, in which case the Cabling may be installed in accordance with one of the following methods:

- (a) Installation of the Cable or Conduit at any depth under a covering of at least 50 mm of fine aggregate concrete.
- (b) Installation of the Cable in medium duty metallic Conduit that meets the requirements of AS/CA S008 for underground Conduit chased into, or secured to the surface of, the ground and installed in such a way so as not to be hazardous to pedestrians.
- (c) Installation of the Cable in Conduit that meets the requirements of AS/CA S008 for underground Conduit installed above the surface of the ground and secured against a fixed vertical structure such as a retaining wall or fence.
- (d) Use of steel wire armoured (SWA) Cable, without enclosure in Conduit, either—
 - (i) chased into, or secured to, the surface of the ground and installed in such a way so as not to be hazardous to pedestrians; or
 - (ii) installed above the surface of the ground and secured against a fixed vertical structure such as a retaining wall or fence.

Note 1: Installation of metallic Conduit and/or steel wire armoured Cables in an EPR Hazard Zone may extend the hazard zone. In such cases, the installation should only proceed on the basis of an engineered design prepared in compliance with the relevant code agreed with the power utility. Refer to Clause 6.1.

Note 2: Cabling installed in accordance with Items (c) and (d) (ii) is outdoor surface Cabling. Refer to Clause 17.5

18.7 Crossing another service

18.7.1 General

Where underground Customer Cabling crosses another service, the separation at the crossing **shall** be in accordance with the requirements of the other utility provided that, where the other

service is LV or HV Power, the separation is greater than or equal to the minimum separations specified in Clause 18.7.2.

18.7.2 Crossing with LV or HV power

Where Customer Cabling crosses LV or HV Power Cabling —

- (a) it should cross above the power Cabling;
- (b) where it is necessary for power to be uppermost and it is not enclosed in heavy duty orange Conduit, a concrete barrier to Clause 3.11.4.3 of AS/NZS 3000 **shall** be placed above the power cables for 600 mm either side of the crossing; and
- (c) whether or not the Customer Cabling crosses above or below the power Cabling, separation between the Customer Cabling and the power Cabling at the crossing **shall** be in accordance with Table 4.

18.8 Separate trench ('exclusive trench')

18.8.1 General

Where underground Customer Cabling runs in a separate trench ('exclusive trench') alongside trenching for another service, the separation **shall** be in accordance with the requirements of the other utility provided that, where the other service is LV or HV Power, the separation is greater than or equal to the minimum separations specified in Clause 18.8.2.

18.8.2 Parallel run with LV or HV power

For a parallel run with LV or HV Power Cabling in a separate trench, the minimum separation between the Customer Cabling and the power Cabling **shall** be in accordance with Table 4.

Note: The separation distances may be measured radially (vertically, horizontally or diagonally) in a perpendicular plane from the outer surface of the Cable or Conduit. Where practicable, the Customer Cabling should be installed above the power Cabling to support safer access to the Customer Cabling subsequent to the initial installation.

18.9 Shared trench with another service

18.9.1 General

Where Customer Cabling is installed in a trench together with a Conduit, pipe or Cable of another service such as gas, water or LV or HV Power, physical separation between the Customer Cabling and the other service **shall** be as required by the other utility provided that, where the other service is LV or HV Power, the separation is greater than or equal to the minimum separations specified in Clause 18.9.2.

Note: The trench may be shared with more than one service as long as the required separation is maintained from each service.

18.9.2 Shared trench with LV or HV power

No separation is required between an insulating Customer Cable Conduit and an insulating LV Power Conduit where the Customer Cable Conduit is coloured white (or with a white stripe) and is marked 'COMMUNICATIONS' and the power Conduit is coloured orange and is marked 'ELECTRICAL'. In other cases, separation of Customer Cabling and LV or HV Power Cabling **shall** be in accordance with Table 4.

Note: The separation distances may be measured radially (vertically, horizontally or diagonally) in a perpendicular plane from the outer surface of the Cable or Conduit. Where practicable, the Customer Cabling should be installed above the power Cabling to support safer access to the Customer Cabling subsequent to the initial installation.

18.10 Low frequency induction (LFI)

It is necessary, in cases of parallel runs with underground or aerial HV Power lines, to evaluate the level of Low Frequency Induction. If the level of induction exceeds the permissible limit, the installation should only proceed on the basis of a design by a Registered Electrical Engineer or Registered ITEE Engineer prepared in compliance with the relevant codes. Refer to Clause 6.2.

18.11 Exclusion zones

When installing or repairing underground Customer Cabling, the Cabling Provider **shall** comply with the relevant State or Territory regulations for working near underground utility services such as HV Power Cables, gas pipelines, water mains or sanitation pipes and associated assets.

Note: Specific approval or accreditation may be required to work within any exclusion zone defined by the relevant authority.

Table 4
Underground customer cabling separation from power cabling

	Customer Cabling situation	Power Cable protection	Minimum separation distance
LV	Exclusive trench crossing above LV	In or under a covering to AS/NZS 3000 requirements (Note 1)	100 mm
	Exclusive trench crossing above LV	No covering (Note 2)	300 mm
	Exclusive trench crossing under LV	Heavy duty orange Conduit or a concrete barrier to Clause 3.11.4.3 of AS/NZS 3000 above the LV for 600 mm either side of the crossing	100 mm
	Exclusive trench parallel run	In or under a covering to AS/NZS 3000 requirements (Note 1)	100 mm
	Exclusive trench parallel run	No covering (Note 2)	300 mm
	Shared trench in insulating Conduit	In heavy duty orange Conduit marked 'ELECTRICAL'	Nil (Note 3)
	Shared trench	Under a covering to Clause 3.11.4.3 of AS/NZS 3000 (Note 1)	100 mm
	Shared trench	No covering (Note 2)	300 mm
HV	Exclusive trench crossing above HV	In or under a covering to AS/NZS 3000 requirements (Note 1)	300 mm
	Exclusive trench crossing above HV	No covering (Note 2)	450 mm
	Exclusive trench crossing under HV	Heavy duty orange Conduit or a concrete barrier to Clause 3.11.4.3 of AS/NZS 3000 above the HV for 600 mm either side of the crossing	300 mm
	Exclusive trench parallel run	In or under a covering to AS/NZS 3000 requirements (Note 1)	300 mm
	Exclusive trench parallel run	No covering (Note 2)	450 mm
	Shared trench	In or under a covering to AS/NZS 3000 requirements (Note 1)	300 mm
	Shared trench	No covering (Note 2)	450 mm

Note 1: Clause 3.11 of AS/NZS 3000 applies. This includes Category A systems where the power Cable is enclosed in a heavy duty Cabling Enclosure without further protection, such as in orange (heavy duty) insulating Conduit, and Category B systems where additional mechanical protection is provided above the power Cable in accordance with the requirements of Clause 3.11.4.3 of AS/NZS 3000.

Note 2: Installation of underground power Cable in Customer Premises without a protective covering is not allowable under AS/NZS 3000. However, there may be cases where AS/NZS 3000 does not apply or has not been followed, in which case unprotected underground power Cable may be encountered. In such circumstances it is recommended to use the separation distances stated in C524 Industry Code.

Note 3: No separation is required if the Customer Cable is enclosed in insulating Conduit, coloured white (or with a white stripe) and is marked 'COMMUNICATIONS'.

Note 4: For added Cable protection, Customer Cabling may be enclosed in insulating Conduit that meets the requirements of AS/CA S008 for underground Conduit, but this does not reduce the minimum separation distances required except for the case described in Note 3.

19 AERIAL CABLING

19.1 Poles and support structures

19.1.1 General

Any pole or structure supporting aerial Customer Cable—

- (a) **shall** be fit for the purpose;
- (b) **shall** be installed to a depth or otherwise anchored to adequately support itself and the maximum likely load; and
- (c) should be regularly inspected by a qualified pole inspector to ensure its ongoing safety.

19.1.2 Separation of poles and structures from aerial power lines

19.1.2.1 Parallel pole routes

Poles or structures supporting aerial Customer Cable in a parallel route to an aerial power line supported on separate poles or structures **shall** be installed such that the aerial Customer Cable, poles, structures, supports and fittings are separated from the vertical projection below any aerial power line, pole, structure, support or fitting by a minimum distance of—

- (a) 50 m for an aerial HV Power line exceeding 330 kV;
- (b) 10 m for an aerial HV Power line not exceeding 330 kV;
- (c) 10 m for an uninsulated aerial LV Power line;
- (d) 10 m for an insulated aerial LV Power line owned or operated by a power utility unless otherwise agreed by the power utility; or
- (e) 2.4 m in all other cases.

19.1.2.2 Crossings

A pole or structure supporting aerial Customer Cable at a crossing with an aerial power line **shall** be separated from the aerial power line in accordance with Item 19.5.7.1(d).

19.2 Ground clearance

The minimum clearance from ground in any direction of an aerial Customer Cable **shall** be as follows:

- (a) Over any Customer Premises land not traversable by road vehicles — 2.7 m.
- (b) Over any residential driveway — 3.5 m.
- (c) Over any commercial/industrial driveway or private roadway — 4.9 m.

- (d) Over any public roadway or footway — as required by the relevant authority but, in any case, no less than 4.9 m.

Note: The C524 Industry Code may be used as a guide for Cabling in public property.

19.3 Cable compliance

19.3.1 UV resistance

Customer Cable installed as Aerial Cabling **shall** meet the requirements of AS/CA S008 for UV resistance unless the entire length of the Cable is protected against exposure to direct sunlight, e.g. totally enclosed in suitable Conduit.

19.3.2 Integral bearer cable

Cable with an integral Bearer **shall** meet the relevant requirements of AS/CA S008.

Note: Integral Bearer Cable is required for crossings and shared poles with aerial power lines (see Clause 19.5.8.1).

19.4 Fastening of catenary supports or bearers

Catenary support or Bearer fastenings to poles, walls or other supporting structures—

- (a) **shall** be capable of supporting the load of the Cable under the installed conditions taking account of span length, wind speed, ambient temperature range, sag, tension and applicable safety factors;
- (b) **shall** be terminated so as to support the installation under extreme weather conditions;
- (c) **shall** be fit for purpose and suitable for the environment e.g. non-corroding for coastal installations; and
- (d) should be terminated with a termination that tightens on the fixing device as the strain increases.

19.5 Crossings and shared poles (joint use) with aerial power lines

19.5.1 General

Aerial Customer Cabling may cross aerial power lines or may be run on the same poles or structures as aerial power lines, subject to the requirements of Clauses 19.5.2 to 19.5.10.

Note: Long parallel runs of aerial HV Power lines and Customer Cabling that contains Electrically Conductive Elements should be avoided where possible. Refer to Clause 6.2 and Appendix H.

19.5.2 Permission of the owner of the poles

Aerial Customer Cabling **shall not** be attached to any pole, building attachment or structure carrying an aerial power line unless the owner of the pole or structure has authorised the attachment.

Note: Before any Cable is attached, the pole or structure may need to be assessed by an appropriately Skilled Person to ensure it is capable of supporting the additional dynamic load.

19.5.3 Attachment to poles or structures carrying HV Power lines of 66 kV or higher

Aerial Customer Cabling **shall not** attach to a pole or structure carrying an aerial power line of 66 kV or higher.

19.5.4 Attachment to poles or structures carrying HV power lines less than 66 kV

Aerial Customer Cabling that contains Electrically Conductive Elements **shall not** attach to a pole or structure carrying an HV Power line less than 66 kV unless—

- (a) there is an existing LV Power line below the HV Power line and the pole or structure is not conductive; or
- (b) the attachment is for a crossing only and the pole or structure is not conductive.

Note: Whether or not the Customer Cabling contains Electrically Conductive Elements, it is to be separated from power and other services in accordance with Clause 19.5.7.

19.5.5 Attachment to a pole or structure carrying an HV power transformer

Aerial Customer Cabling **shall not** attach to a pole or structure carrying an HV Power transformer.

19.5.6 Crossing aerial HV power lines exceeding 330 kV

Aerial Customer Cabling **shall not** cross over or under an aerial power line exceeding 330 kV.

Note 1: Where it is necessary for Customer Cabling to cross an aerial power line exceeding 330 kV, the Customer Cabling should be installed underground for at least 50 m each side of the power line at an angle as near as practicable to 90° to the power line route.

Note 2: Refer to Appendix H for information on EPR hazards.

19.5.7 Relative position of aerial customer cabling and aerial power lines

19.5.7.1 Crossings

Aerial Customer Cabling may cross aerial power lines not exceeding 330 kV at poles/structures or in span under the following conditions:

- (a) The aerial Customer Cabling **shall** cross below the aerial power line except in unusual circumstances, e.g. Cabling between tall Buildings, in which case aerial Customer Cabling may cross above the aerial power line as long as—
 - (i) the span of the Customer Cabling and its height above the aerial power line are such that, in the event of a failure at either extremity of the span, the Customer Cabling will clear the power line by at least 5 m; and
 - (ii) the agreement of the utility or body that owns or operates the aerial power line is obtained.
- (b) The aerial Customer Cabling **shall** be separated from the aerial power line in accordance with Clause 19.5.7.3 and any other aerial services in accordance with Clause 19.6.
- (c) The point of crossing **shall** be as far as practicable from the middle of the aerial power line span as long as—
 - (i) the Customer Cable is not within 2.4 m of any pole or structure carrying an aerial LV Power line or within 3.6 m of any pole or structure carrying an aerial HV Power line; or
 - (ii) the Customer Cable is attached to the pole or structure carrying the aerial power line, subject to the requirements of this Standard.
- (d) A pole or structure supporting aerial Customer Cable on either side of a crossing with an aerial power line **shall not** be installed within 2.4 m of the vertical projection below any aerial power line unless the radial distance from any part of the pole or structure to the aerial power line is at least the distance specified in Table 5.

19.5.7.2 Shared poles or structures ('joint use')

Aerial Customer Cabling, including any joint or termination Enclosure, that is installed on the same poles or structures as an aerial power line, i.e. run in parallel with the power line, **shall not** be installed above the aerial power line.

Note: This does not apply to aerial Customer Cabling and aerial power lines that are suspended between two Buildings—

- (a) on separate Bearers or catenary supports and separated in accordance with Clause 19.1.2.1; or

- (b) secured to the same catenary support, subject to the requirements of Clause 8.2.1, and separated in accordance with Clause 8.5.

19.5.7.3 Separation from aerial power lines and fittings

Aerial Customer Cabling, including any joint or termination Enclosure, that attaches to the same pole or structure as an aerial power line or that crosses an aerial power line in span **shall** be separated from the aerial LV and HV Power lines and fittings in accordance with Table 5.

19.5.8 Cable

19.5.8.1 Cable type

An aerial Customer Cable that crosses an aerial power line or that is attached to any pole or structure carrying an aerial power line **shall** incorporate an insulated, integral Bearer.

19.5.8.2 Cable bearer

The Bearer of the Customer Cable—

- (a) **shall** be insulated from any Conductive Pole Or Structure carrying an aerial power line;
- (b) **shall** be insulated or shrouded to prevent accidental personal contact with the Bearer by a Skilled Person or Instructed Person accessing the power line or another service; and
- (c) **shall not** be earthed.

19.5.9 Joints or terminations

Any aerial Customer Cable joint or Customer Cable connections installed on a pole or structure carrying an aerial power line **shall** be contained within an Enclosure that has double insulation between the internal conductors and the external surface of the Enclosure, in accordance with the requirements of AS/CA S008.

19.5.10 Power earthing conductors

Any power earthing conductor installed on a pole or structure to which aerial Customer Cabling is attached **shall** be insulated between the ground and 600 mm above the uppermost Customer Cabling attachment or fitting.

19.6 Separation from other telecommunications cabling

Aerial Customer Cabling **shall** be separated from any other aerial telecommunications Cabling in accordance with the requirements of the relevant Carrier, service provider or utility.

19.7 Cabling across watercourses

Aerial Customer Cabling over navigable water **shall**—

- (a) be installed in a way that will allow normal safe passage of vessels; and
- (b) comply with the requirements of the relevant authorities.

19.8 Exclusion zones

When working on or near any pole or structure carrying an aerial power line, the Cabling Provider **shall** comply with the relevant State or Territory regulations for working near aerial power lines.

Note: Specific approval or accreditation may be required to work within any exclusion zone defined by the relevant authority.

Table 5

Minimum separation of aerial customer cabling, including joint or termination enclosures and telecommunications poles or structures, from aerial power lines and fittings

Type of power line, structure or fitting	At a shared/ common pole or structure (Note 8)	In span	Telecommunications pole or structure			
			Crossing (Note 5)		Separate parallel route	
			Horiz.	Radial		
Light fitting, stay fitting or power Conduit at a pole	50 mm	n/a	n/a		n/a	
LV Cable independently secured to the same catenary support as the Customer Cable (Note 1)	50 mm or insulating Conduit	Insulating Conduit	n/a		n/a	
Independently supported, insulated LV (Notes 2 and 3)	0.6 m	0.6 m	2.4 m	2.4 m	2.4 m	
Uninsulated LV	1.2 m	0.6 m	2.4 m	2.4 m	10 m	
HV (Note 3)	≤ 11 kV	2.4 m (Note 4)	1.2 m	2.4 m	3.7 m	10 m
	> 11 kV ≤ 33 kV		2.1 m	2.4 m	4.0 m	10 m
	> 33 kV ≤ 66 kV	3.0 m (Note 4)	2.1 m	2.4 m	4.0 m	10 m
	> 66 kV ≤ 132 kV	Note 6	3.0 m	2.4 m	4.6 m	10 m
	> 132 kV ≤ 220 kV		3.7 m	2.4 m	6.0 m	10 m
	> 220 kV ≤ 330 kV		4.6 m	2.4 m	7.5 m	10 m
	> 330 kV		Note 7	Note 7		50 m

Note 1: Refer to Clause 8.2.1 and Item 8.5(d).

Note 2: 'Independently supported, insulated LV' means—

- (a) aerial bundled Cable (ABC);
- (b) insulated Cable on a separate catenary support;
- (c) aerial insulated Cable to a light fitting; or
- (d) an insulated service lead or neutral-screened Cable servicing a Building.

Note 3: Earthed Metallic Screened HV ABC may be treated as 'Independently supported insulated LV'.

Note 4: HV separations at the pole apply where no aerial LV Power line is installed below the HV (attachment to the pole in such cases is only permitted for crossings).

Note 5: Where the horizontal distance cannot be met, the radial distance applies. The horizontal distance is measured from the vertical projection below the aerial power line to any part of the telecommunications pole or structure. The radial distance is measured from the power line itself to the closest part of the telecommunications pole or structure. Refer to Item 19.5.7.1(d).

Note 6: Attachment of Customer Cabling to a pole or structure carrying power lines exceeding 66 kV is not permitted (see Clause 19.5.3).

Note 7: Aerial Customer Cabling crossings with aerial power lines exceeding 330 kV are not permitted (see Clause 19.5.6). Where it is necessary for Customer Cabling to cross power lines exceeding 330 kV, the Customer Cabling should be installed underground for at least 50 m each side of the power lines at an angle as close as practicable to 90° to the power line route.

Note 8: The Customer Cable Bearer is to be insulated from any Conductive Pole Or Structure and insulated or shrouded to prevent accidental personal contact with the Bearer by an electrical worker accessing the power line. Refer to Clause 19.5.8.2.

20 TELECOMMUNICATIONS EARTHING AND POWER DISTRIBUTION

20.1 Application

This section applies to Customer Cabling used for telecommunications earthing and telecommunications power distribution in Customer Premises.

Note: An ELV (DC or AC) power supply system may be subject to the requirements of AS/NZS 3000 and the relevant energy authority in addition to this Standard.

Several systems of earthing may be used for telecommunications purposes, as described in Clause 20.2.

20.2 Earthing systems, general description

20.2.1 Communications Earth System

The Communications Earth System (CES) is a dual-purpose telecommunications earthing system used for both functional and protective purposes. Earthing conductors used for this system have green/yellow insulation.

20.2.2 Telecommunications Reference Conductor

The Telecommunications Reference Conductor (TRC) is a low noise telecommunications earthing system used specifically for signalling and other functional purposes, which may include equipment reliability. TRC status is indicated by the use of earthing conductors with violet insulation. For new installations, a TRC system would normally only be used where a CES is too noisy for the intended application.

20.2.3 ELV DC power supply system

Installations in Restricted Access Areas operating an ELV DC power supply system may provide for DC/earth return paths in accordance with AS/NZS 3015. With this system, the earth may be distributed to equipment via the positive or negative conductor of the DC supply.

20.2.4 DC earth return circuit

A DC earth return circuit may be required where continuous DC current will be discharged to earth, e.g. for remote Power Feeding purposes. Such circuits require the installation of a dedicated earth electrode to prevent damage to the electrical earthing system. Earthing conductors used for this purpose have violet insulation and are labelled at each termination point.

20.3 Compliance labelling

Earthing and telecommunications power distribution components (e.g. earthing/power conductors, earthing bars, busbars, earthing/power terminals, line tap devices, earth electrodes and

associated fittings, batteries, fuses and circuit breakers) are not required to comply with the *Telecommunications (Labelling Notice for Customer Equipment and Customer Cabling) Instrument*.

20.4 Voltage and current limiting

Where Customer Cabling is used for Power Feeding other than power derived from a Carriage Service, the Cabling **shall** be protected from excessive currents or voltages that may cause damage or fire, by such means as fuses, circuit breakers, or voltage or current limiting circuitry.

Note 1: ES1 and ES2 circuits are either voltage or current limited.

Note 2: ES3 Generic Circuits are voltage and current limited as specified in Clause 5.7.1.

Note 3: ES3 Special Application Circuits are voltage and current limited by the use of fuses, circuit breakers or manufacturer nominated safeguards, as specified in Clause 5.7.3.

20.5 EPR hazard zones

An earthing or bonding connection **shall not** be made to any equipment, Cabling, earth electrode or any earthed object that is located within an EPR Hazard Zone.

Note: This is to prevent—

- (a) the EPR hazard being extended outside the hazard zone; and
- (b) a remote earth being extended inside the hazard zone.

20.6 Functional earth requirement

Where a connection to a Functional Earth is specified for Customer Equipment by the manufacturer or supplier of the equipment—

- (a) if connection to a particular type of earthing system is not specified, the functional earth connection may be made to a CES, TRC, ELV DC power supply system or a DC earth return circuit, as appropriate to the circumstances;
- (b) if the equipment was manufactured after 1997 and connection to a particular type of earthing system is specified (e.g. TRC), the equipment **shall** be Connected to that type of earthing system; or
- (c) if the equipment was manufactured before 1998 and connection to a TRC, Telecommunications Service Earth (TSE) or Telecommunications Earth (TE) is specified, the functional earth connection may be made to a CES, TRC, ELV DC power supply system or a DC earth return circuit, as appropriate to the circumstances.

Note: A CES may be too noisy for some equipment in some situations.

20.7 Protective earth requirement

Where a connection to Protective Earth is specified for Customer Cabling or Customer Equipment in this Standard or elsewhere, it **shall** be Connected in accordance with one of the following:

- (a) To a CES.
- (b) Where a TRC system is installed—
 - (i) to the CET (where provided); or
 - (ii) to the bar, terminal or backmount at the Designated Distributor where the green/yellow Equipotential Bonding conductor is Connected (see Figures 5, 6 and 7).
- (c) In appropriate circumstances, via an Equipotential Bonding conductor directly to the electrical earth electrode by an independent connecting device, which **shall** be clearly identified.
- (d) Directly to the electrical earthing system via a Protective Earth Conductor (see Note 1).
- (e) If there is no electrical earthing system at the Building, to an earth electrode which—
 - (i) **shall** comply with Clause 20.13.8.2;
 - (ii) should comply with Clause 20.13.8.3;
 - (iii) **shall** have a resistance to the mass of earth not exceeding 30Ω (see Note 2); and
 - (iv) should also be Connected by an independent connecting device to any metallic structural Building elements or services (e.g. water pipe).

Note 1: A Protective Earthing Conductor is part of the electrical installation and usually needs to be installed by a licensed electrical worker.

Note 2: A resistance to the mass of earth of 10Ω or less is recommended.

20.8 Earthing and bonding conductors

20.8.1 Conductor type

Except in the case of an individual signalling lead or Cable shield/drain wire connection in accordance with Clause 20.8.2, all earthing and bonding conductors **shall** be multi-stranded copper conductor, single core, PVC insulated, 0.6/1.0 kV rated voltage.

Note: In this Standard, reference is made to earthing conductor size based on the total cross-sectional area of the stranded conductor.

20.8.2 Multi-pair cable

Multi-pair Cable **shall not** be used for earthing distribution except for individual connection of a Functional Earth to Customer Equipment in conjunction with a telecommunications Line (e.g. at a Telecommunications Outlet).

Note: The Cable shield or drain wire of a multi-pair Cable may be earthed in accordance with Clause 20.18.

20.8.3 Conductor size

An earthing or bonding conductor **shall** be greater than or equal to the minimum size listed for the relevant application in Table 7 as long as the resistance limits specified in Clauses 20.11.2.4, 20.12.4 and 20.13.11 are not exceeded.

20.8.4 Connection or jointing/coupling of conductors

All earthing and bonding conductors **shall** be Connected, joined or coupled in accordance with Clauses 20.9.2 or 20.10, as applicable.

20.9 Earthing or bonding bars and terminals

20.9.1 Capacity

An earthing/bonding bar or terminal used for connection of earthing or bonding conductors, other than a terminal used for connection of an individual signalling lead or Cable shield/drain wire described in Clauses 20.8.1 and 20.8.2, **shall—**

- (a) be capable of terminating conductors of at least 6 mm² in cross-sectional area or Cable Lugs designed to terminate 6 mm² conductors; and
- (b) be sized to suit the installation.

20.9.2 Earthing or bonding conductor connection

The following requirements apply to the connection of an earthing or bonding conductor to an earthing/bonding bar or terminal, other than a terminal used for connection of an individual signalling lead or Cable shield/drain wire described in Clauses 20.8.1 and 20.8.2:

- (a) The conductor **shall** be secured by means of a screw, either directly or using a Cable Lug.
- (b) Sufficient insulation **shall** be removed from the conductor to secure all conductor strands in the termination.
- (c) The bare strands of the conductor **shall** be twisted or otherwise consolidated before fixing in the termination.
- (d) Consolidation of bare strands before termination **shall not** be made by means of soldering.
- (e) Where a Cable Lug is used to terminate the conductor, the conductor **shall** be secured to the Cable Lug within a suitable

ferrule that is crimped or compressed using a tool designed for the purpose.

(f) Strands of the conductor **shall not** be cut away to enable fitting into a lug or termination link.

(g) Cable Lugs used **shall** be fit for purpose.

Note: If required, the termination within the ferrule of a Cable Lug may be filled with solder after crimping to exclude moisture.

20.9.3 Access to earthing/bonding bars or terminals

The earthing/bonding bar or terminal **shall** be enclosed or located in a position that prevents unintentional contact by any person.

20.10 Earthing and bonding conductor joints and couplings

20.10.1 Jointing/Coupling method

20.10.1.1 General

Any earthing or bonding conductor joint or coupling **shall** be mechanically and electrically sound to reliably maintain electrical continuity by one of the methods described in Clauses 20.10.1.2 to 20.10.1.5.

20.10.1.2 Soldered connections

Where a soldered connection is used, it **shall** be made such that the conductors are retained firmly in position independently of the solder, e.g. by crimping in a metal ferrule, crimp link or, for conductors of not more than seven strands, twisted together.

20.10.1.3 Clamped connections

Any clamped connection **shall** be made so that the conductors are securely retained between metal surfaces that are shaped or arranged to prevent spreading of any conductor strands.

20.10.1.4 Tunnel type connections

Where a tunnel type connector is used—

(a) the connector used **shall** have at least two screws per termination tunnel; and

(b) all conductors **shall** be secured by at least two screws within the same tunnel.

20.10.1.5 Crimped connections

Any crimped connection **shall** be made such that the conductors being joined or coupled are securely retained within a suitable ferrule that is crimped using a tool designed for the purpose.

20.10.1.6 Insulation displacement connectors
An insulation displacement connector **shall not** be used for jointing or coupling of earthing or bonding conductors.

20.10.2 Insulation of the joint/coupling
All earthing or bonding conductor joints and couplings **shall** be insulated or housed in an insulated Enclosure.

20.10.3 Environmental protection of the joint/coupling
All earthing or bonding conductor joints and couplings **shall** be protected from environmental influences.

20.11 Equipotential bonding

20.11.1 General

The CES or TRC **shall** be equipotentially bonded to the earthing system of the electrical installation to minimise the potential difference (voltage) between the earthing systems.

Note 1: Additional requirements for the CES or TRC are set out in Clauses 20.12.3 and 20.13.9 respectively.

Note 2: Equipotential Bonding methods are illustrated in Figures 3 to 6.

20.11.2 Communications bonding conductor

20.11.2.1 Colour and size

The earthing conductor used for Equipotential Bonding **shall** have—

- (a) a minimum cross-sectional area of 6 mm²; and
- (b) green/yellow insulation.

20.11.2.2 Length

The bonding conductor **shall** be as short and as direct as practicable.

Note: Where a surge suppression device is installed, the total earthing conductor length between the surge suppression device and the main earthing bar, terminal or connection in the electrical switchboard should not exceed 10 m. A total earthing/bonding conductor length of 1.5 m or less is preferred for more effective protection of persons and for protection of any equipment Connected to the telecommunications Line.

20.11.2.3 Labelling

The bonding conductor **shall** be legibly and durably labelled 'Communications Bonding Conductor' or 'Telecommunications Bonding Conductor' at the electrical installation end and, where both ends of the bonding conductor are not readily identifiable, at the telecommunications earthing system end.

20.11.2.4 Resistance

The resistance of the communications bonding conductor **shall not** exceed 0.5 Ω.

Note 1: This resistance is measured between the point where the bonding conductor connects to the electrical earthing system and the CET (bonding method 1 or 2) or the bar, terminal or backmount in the telecommunications equipment (bonding method 3).

Note 2: The resistance should be measured using a suitable instrument or may be calculated according to the length and size of the bonding conductor using Table 6.

Table 6

Resistance vs. length for standard copper earthing conductors

Nominal area (mm ²)	Maximum diameter (mm)	Nominal resistance @20°C plain annealed copper (Ω /km)	Nominal conductor length for 1 Ω resistance (m)
2.5	2.1	7.41	135
4	2.6	4.61	217
6	3.2	3.08	324
16	5.2	1.15	869
35	7.8	0.524	1908

Note: To determine the maximum conductor length for a given resistance, multiply the length in the last column with the resistance value, e.g. length of 2.5 mm² conductor for a resistance of 5 Ω = 135 x 5 = 675 m.

20.11.3 Communications Earth Terminal (CET)

20.11.3.1 General

A CET **shall** comply with Clause 20.9.

20.11.3.2 Location

Where a CET is used, the CET—

- (a) **shall** be installed in a convenient and Readily Accessible location; and
- (b) **shall not** be installed on or within an electrical switchboard.

Note: It is recommended that the CET be installed adjacent to the switchboard to which it is Connected.

20.11.3.3 Marking

The CET **shall** be marked 'Communications Earth Terminal'.

20.11.4 Connection to the electrical earthing system

For Equipotential Bonding of the CES or TRC, the following **shall** be met:

- (a) The bonding conductor connection to the electrical earthing system **shall**—
 - (i) be made by means prescribed in AS/NZS 3000 (see Note 1); and
 - (ii) be suitably protected against corrosion.
- (b) The Cabling Provider **shall not** do anything to degrade the integrity of the earthing system of the electrical installation.

Note 1: Approved connection methods are illustrated in Figures 3 to 6.

Note 2: The connection to the electrical earthing system may need to be made by a licensed electrical worker. In particular, only a licensed electrical worker may cut or rearrange the main or sub-main earthing conductor or make any connection in the electrical switchboard.

20.12 Communications Earth System (CES)

20.12.1 Description of the CES

The CES may be used for protective and functional earthing and emanates from the CET or, where Equipotential Bonding method 3 is used, from the earthing bar, terminal or backmount to which the communications bonding conductor is Connected (see Figures 3 and 4). The CES has low susceptibility to voltage differences between the telecommunications and electrical earthing systems under surge conditions that may cause damage to Customer Equipment. However, the CES may be noisy and may not be suitable for functional earthing of some Customer Equipment.

Note: The CES is available for all communications earthing in the Building whether or not the communications Cabling is Connected to a Carrier's Telecommunications Network.

20.12.2 CES conductors

20.12.2.1 Colour

Except for an individual signalling lead or Cable shield/drain wire connection as described in Clauses 20.8.1 and 20.8.2, all earthing conductors used for the CES **shall** have green/yellow insulation.

20.12.2.2 Size

CES conductors—

- (a) **shall** be sized to meet the resistance limits of Clause 20.12.4; and

- (b) **shall not** be less than the applicable minimum size listed in Table 7.

20.12.3 Equipotential bonding of the CES

The CES **shall** be—

- (a) Connected to the earthing system of the electrical installation in accordance with the general requirements of Clause 20.11; and
- (b) equipotentially bonded to the earthing system of the electrical installation at the relevant floor or section of the Building by one of the methods shown in Figures 3 and 4.

20.12.4 Resistance of the CES

The resistance of the earthing conductor between the point of connection to the earthing system of the electrical installation and the earthing bar or terminal at any MDF, NTD, Distributor or CAE **shall not** exceed 1 Ω .

Note 1: This resistance includes the bonding conductor resistance (see Clause 20.11.2.4) which, in most cases, should be negligible.

Note 2: Table 6 may be used as a guide.

Note 3: Some installations may require a conductor larger than the minimum sizes specified in Table 7 in order to achieve this resistance limit.

20.13 Telecommunications Reference Conductor (TRC)

20.13.1 Description of the TRC distribution system

The TRC is a functional earthing system that is Connected to an earth reference at one point only in a Building to minimise noise and emanates from a TRC link bar located at the nearest Distributor to the main or first electrical switchboard in the Building. With the TRC, it is important that connections to other earth references are avoided to maintain the integrity of the TRC system. For this reason, TRC conductors have violet insulation for easy identification.

Note 1: On TRC systems installed before October 1990, the TRC conductor was coloured red.

Note 2: The TRC is generally considered to be a live conductor, comparable to the neutral conductor of an AC Mains supply system, i.e. earthed at the source only.

20.13.2 TRC system components

Typically, a TRC distribution system may consist of—

- (a) a TFEE where required;
- (b) where a TFEE is installed, an earthing conductor between the TFEE and a suitable earthing bar or terminal (TRC link bar) at the Designated Distributor;

- (c) TRC conductor(s) from the TRC link bar at the Designated Distributor to a suitable earth bar or terminal (TRC link bar) at each subsequent Distributor where the TRC is to be provided; and
- (d) conductor(s) which extend(s) the TRC from the TRC link bar at one Distributor to a suitable earthing bar or terminal (TRC link bar) at another Distributor or CAE where the TRC is to be provided.

Note 1: The Designated Distributor is a Distributor, near the main or first electrical switchboard in the Building, designated by the Cabling Provider as the most appropriate Distributor for distribution of the TRC system. Such a Distributor may or may not be an MDF.

Note 2: An earthing bar or terminal may only be used as a TRC link bar if it complies with Clause 20.13.7.

20.13.3 TRC to be exclusive to telecommunications services

Where provided, the TRC system **shall** be exclusive to telecommunications services, and separate and distinct from any other Building earth system apart from a single Equipotential Bonding connection to the main earthing bar, main earthing conductor or earth electrode of the main or first electrical switchboard as described in Clause 20.13.9.

20.13.4 Connection to an earth reference

The TRC system **shall** be Connected to an earth reference in accordance with methods of connection shown in Figure 6, 7 or 8 whether or not the TRC is initially Connected to Customer Equipment.

20.13.5 TRC system conductors

20.13.5.1 Colour

Except for the communications bonding conductor (refer to Clause 20.11.2) or an individual signalling lead connection in accordance with Clause 20.8.2, all TRC system conductors **shall** have violet insulation.

20.13.5.2 Size

The following requirements apply to TRC system conductors:

- (a) The conductor **shall** be sized to meet the resistance limits of Clause 20.13.11.
- (b) The conductor **shall not** be less than the applicable minimum size listed in Table 7.
- (c) A conductor feeding any other conductor **shall not** be a smaller size than the conductor it feeds.

20.13.6 Cabling method

The TRC system **shall**—

- (a) be equipotentially bonded to the main earthing bar, main earthing conductor or earth electrode at the main or first electrical switchboard in accordance with Clause 20.13.9;
- (b) emanate from the Designated Distributor; and
- (c) be cabled in a tree or star topology.

Note: The TRC system may comprise a single conductor with taps feeding each Distributor, or there may be two or more TRC system conductors feeding Distributors in a star configuration.

20.13.7 TRC link bars

A TRC link bar **shall**—

- (a) comply with Clause 20.9; and
- (b) be insulated to a minimum of 1.5 kV a.c. (50 Hz) without breakdown for 60 s from the conductive material of the body of the Enclosure, backmount or frame, and from any other earth reference, other than at the point at the Designated Distributor where the TRC is equipotentially bonded to the main earthing bar, main earthing conductor or earth electrode of the main or first electrical switchboard.

Note: This may be achieved by the use of insulated mounting blocks typically available for this purpose.

20.13.8 Telecommunications Functional Earth Electrode (TFEE)

20.13.8.1 Application

A TFEE may be provided for operational purposes or to limit the direct current flowing in the communications bonding conductor.

Note: Recommendations regarding limits for direct current flowing in the communications bonding conductor are given in Appendix E.

20.13.8.2 Type of electrode

Where a TFEE is provided, it **shall** be one of the following types:

- (a) Any of the following rods driven to a vertical depth of not less than 1.2 m:
 - (i) 12 mm non-ferrous or non-ferrous coated rod.
 - (ii) 12 mm stainless steel rod or stainless steel coated rod.
 - (iii) 16 mm galvanized steel rod or equivalent steel section with a cross-sectional area of at least 200 mm² with no part less than 3 mm thick.

- (b) 35 mm² bare copper conductor, or a 40 mm × 3 mm hot-dipped galvanised strip electrode not less than 3 m in length, buried in a horizontal trench to a depth of not less than 0.5 m.
- (c) A galvanised star picket of minimum mass of 4.5 kg (e.g. a galvanised 'Y' section fence post) either—
 - (i) driven to a vertical depth of not less than 1.2 m; or
 - (ii) buried in a horizontal trench to a depth of not less than 0.5 m.

20.13.8.3 Location of electrode

Where a TFEE is provided, in general it should be located in a position that meets all of the following:

- (a) It is exposed to the weather.
- (b) It is outside the Building.
- (c) It is separated from metallic Enclosures of other buried services.

Note: It is recommended that a separation of not less than 0.5 m be maintained between an earth electrode and buried metallic services such as water, gas, flammable liquid and the AC Mains supply electrode, in order to reduce possible electrolytic action adversely affecting the electrode or service.

20.13.8.4 Labelling

The TFEE **shall** be permanently labelled 'Telecommunications Electrode'.

20.13.8.5 Conductor colour and size

The conductor connecting the TFEE to the TRC link bar at the Designated Distributor **shall** have—

- (a) a minimum cross-sectional area of 4 mm²; and
- (b) violet insulation.

20.13.8.6 Electrodes in separate buildings

Where the electrical earth electrode is not located in the same Building as the Designated Distributor (e.g. if the AC Mains supply and earth are fed from another Building), a TFEE **shall** be Connected in accordance with Figure 8.

20.13.9 Equipotential bonding of the TRC system

20.13.9.1 General

The TRC system **shall**—

- (a) be Connected to the earthing system of the electrical installation in accordance with the general requirements of Clause 20.11; and

- (b) be equipotentially bonded to the earthing system of the electrical installation at one point only within the Building where it is installed, by one of the methods shown in Figures 5, 6 and 7.

20.13.9.2 TRC noise problems or excessive direct current

Where there is excessive noise on the electrical earthing system or excessive direct current in the communications bonding conductor (refer to Appendix E), the TRC system may be equipotentially bonded to the earthing system of the electrical installation via a Differential Earth Clamp in accordance with Figure 7 or 8, in which case—

- (a) a TFEE **shall** be provided;
- (b) a Differential Earth Clamp **shall not** be Connected in a way that it is required to conduct surge current to the electrical earthing system via any surge suppression device Connected to a telecommunications Line;
- (c) all TRC link bars and terminations **shall** be enclosed or located so as to prevent Ordinary Person access; and
- (d) where the maximum limiting voltage of the Differential Earth Clamp exceeds ELV limits, all TRC link bars and terminations **shall** be suitably labelled to warn workers of possible voltage differences between the TRC and Protective Earth, for example:

WARNING! This TRC is not directly bonded to the electrical earthing system. A hazardous voltage may exist between the TRC and other earthed objects.

20.13.10 TRC in a separate building

20.13.10.1 Where there is an electrical earthing system in the separate building

Where a separate Building in Customer Premises is fed by an AC Mains supply to an electrical switchboard in that separate Building and a TRC is required at the separate Building—

- (a) a separate TRC system **shall** be provided at the separate Building in accordance with Clauses 20.13.2 to 20.13.9; and
- (b) the separate TRC system **shall not** be Connected to the main Building TRC system.

20.13.10.2 Where there is no electrical earthing system in the separate building

Where the separate Building does not have an electrical switchboard and a TRC is required at the separate Building—

- (a) the TRC may be fed to the separate Building via a violet TRC system conductor or a Cable pair, as appropriate (see Clause 20.8.2); and
- (b) Ordinary Person access to the TRC in the separate Building **shall** be prevented by effective means.

20.13.11 Resistance of the TRC system

The resistance of the TRC **shall not** exceed 5Ω measured between the TRC link bar at the Designated Distributor and the TRC link bar at any other Distributor or CAE.

Note 1: Table 6 may be used as a guide.

Note 2: Some installations may require a conductor larger than the minimum size specified in Table 7 in order to achieve this resistance limit.

20.14 Interconnection of CES and TRC systems

Where both CES and TRC systems are used in the same Building, they **shall** be kept separate and distinct except at the point where the TRC is equipotentially bonded to the main earthing bar, main earthing conductor or earth electrode of the electrical installation. However, the TRC may be indirectly Connected to a Protective Earthing Conductor or CES at additional points via a Differential Earth Clamp, e.g. gas-filled surge suppression device, to minimise the voltage differences between the earthing systems during surge conditions.

Note: For an example of a Differential Earth Clamp, refer to Figure 7, 8 or 9. For more information about Differential Earth Clamps, refer to AS/NZS 1768.

20.15 ES3 DC power supply system

An installation in a Restricted Access Area operating an ES3 DC power supply system that provides DC/earth return paths on the positive or negative conductor of the DC supply, should comply with the ELV DC power system requirements of AS/NZS 3015.

20.16 DC earth return circuit

20.16.1 Separation from other earthing systems

Where Customer Equipment requires a Functional Earth for DC earth return Line current (e.g. double-current teleprinters, earth cailho signalling equipment or earth cailho Power Feeding)—

- (a) the earth used—
 - (i) **shall** be totally separate from the earthing system of the electrical installation, CES and TRC system; and
 - (ii) **shall not** be directly Connected to any other earthing system or any Building metalwork; and
- (b) a separate DC functional earth conductor **shall** be used to extend a dedicated DC functional earth electrode connection to the Distributor or Customer Equipment.

Note: The DC Functional Earth may be indirectly Connected to another earthing system or Building metalwork via a Differential Earth Clamp, e.g. gas-filled surge suppression device, to minimise the voltage differences between the systems during surge conditions. Figures 7 and 8 may be used as a guide and show how a Functional Earth may be indirectly Connected to the earthing system of the electrical installation via a Differential Earth Clamp.

20.16.2 Earth electrode

The dedicated DC functional earth electrode used for the DC earth return circuit—

- (a) **shall** comply with Clause 20.13.8.2; and
- (b) should comply with Clause 20.13.8.3.

20.16.3 Conductor colour, size and labelling

The earthing conductor used for extension of the dedicated DC functional earth electrode to the Distributor or directly to the Customer Equipment **shall**—

- (a) have a minimum cross-sectional area of 4 mm²;
- (b) have violet insulation; and
- (c) be legibly identified 'DC Functional Earth' at each termination point of the conductor, including at the earth electrode termination.

Note: A Cable pair may be used to extend the DC Functional Earth from a Distributor to the Customer Equipment connection point.

20.17 Earthing of metallic barriers

20.17.1 Prohibition — connection to TRC

A metallic barrier **shall not** be Connected to a TRC except at a point described in Item 20.7(b).

20.17.2 Earthing connection

Where a metallic barrier is required to be Connected to an earth reference, this connection **shall** be made to Protective Earth in accordance with Clause 20.7.

20.17.3 Earthing conductor colour and size

The conductor used for earthing of a metallic barrier **shall** have—

- (a) a minimum cross-sectional area of 2.5 mm²; and
- (b) green/yellow insulation.

20.18 Earthing of cable shields and drain wires

20.18.1 General

A metallic Cable shield or drain wire may be earthed or unearthed, depending on operational requirements.

Note: If a Cable shield is to be earthed, Clauses 20.18.2, 20.18.3 and 20.18.4 apply.

20.18.2 Prohibition — connection to TRC

A metallic Cable shield or drain wire **shall not** be Connected to the TRC except at a point described in Item 20.7(b).

20.18.3 Allowable earthing points

Where a metallic Cable shield is required to be Connected to an earth reference, this connection **shall** be made at—

- (a) a point Connected to Protective Earth in accordance with Clause 20.7; or
- (b) any metallic part Connected in accordance with AS/NZS 3000 to the earthing system of the electrical installation, including to a power socket-outlet via an equipment connection.

Note 1: Connection to the shield may be made via the drain wire (if provided), a suitable clamp in contact with the shield, or a fixed connector that is permanently Connected to Protective Earth.

Note 2: As the shield (outer conductor) of coaxial Cable provides a signal return path, it should be Connected at both ends but may be earthed at one end or both ends subject to the requirements of Clause 20.18.4.

20.18.4 Cabling between separate buildings or structures

Where shielded Cable is installed between separate Buildings or structures the following is to be met:

- (a) Where the shield is earthed, either intentionally or unintentionally, at the distant end or at an intermediate point (e.g. at a pole or within a pit or access hole) the shield **shall**—
 - (i) be insulated from any earth reference within the Building or structure (see Note); or
 - (ii) only be Connected to an earth reference via a Differential Earth Clamp that has a minimum DC firing voltage of 400 V, in accordance with Figure 9.
- (b) Where the shield is not earthed at an intermediate point (e.g. at a pole or within a pit or access hole)—
 - (i) one end of the shield may be Connected directly to an earth reference at the Building or structure; and
 - (ii) at least one end of the shield **shall** be treated in accordance with Item (a).

Note: In the case of coaxial Cable, the insulation may be provided by a suitable coaxial isolator.

20.19 Earthing of metallic supports, enclosures, frames, backmounts and steel wire armouring

20.19.1 General

A metallic Cable tray, Conduit, Trunking system, distribution frame, backmount, Enclosure, catenary support or the steel wire armouring of an SWA Cable, may be earthed or unearthed, depending on operational requirements.

Note: The steel wire armouring of an SWA Cable may need to be earthed for the purposes of Clause 9.5.

20.19.2 Prohibition – connection to TRC

A metallic Cable tray, Conduit, Trunking system, distribution frame, backmount, Enclosure, catenary support or the steel wire armouring of an SWA Cable **shall not** be Connected to a TRC except at a point described in Item 20.7(b).

20.19.3 Earthing connection

Where a metallic Cable tray, Conduit, Trunking system, distribution frame, backmount, Enclosure, catenary support or the steel wire armouring of an SWA Cable is required to be Connected to an earth reference, this connection **shall** be made to Protective Earth in accordance with Clause 20.7.

20.19.4 Earthing conductor colour and size

The conductor used for earthing of a metallic Cable tray, Conduit, Trunking system, distribution frame, backmount, Enclosure, catenary support or the steel wire armouring of an SWA Cable **shall** have—

- (a) a minimum cross-sectional area of 2.5 mm²; and
- (b) green/yellow insulation.

20.20 Earthing at distributors terminating outdoor customer cabling

At a Distributor that is located in or on a Building or other structure and which terminates outdoor Customer Cabling where—

- (a) the Customer Cabling contains Electrically Conductive Elements; and
- (b) the Distributor does not have a surge suppression device already installed;

the following requirements apply:

- (i) An earthing bar or terminal **shall** be mounted at the Distributor.
- (ii) The earthing bar or terminal **shall** be Connected to Protective Earth in accordance with Clause 20.7 or to a suitable bonding point using an earthing/bonding conductor with green/yellow insulation.
- (iii) The cross-sectional area of the earthing/bonding conductors between the earth bonding terminal at the Distributor and the main earthing bar, terminal or connection in the electrical switchboard, main earthing conductor or earth electrode, as applicable, **shall not** be less than 6 mm².

Note: The above earthing requirements do not apply to MDFs unless Outdoor Cabling on the Customer Cabling side is present.

20.21 Earthing of surge suppression devices

20.21.1 Surge suppression for the protection of ordinary persons

Any surge suppression device provided for the protection of the Ordinary Person and Connected between telecommunications Line conductors and earth—

- (a) **shall** be Connected to Protective Earth in accordance with Clause 20.7 or to a suitable bonding point specified in AS 4262.1 or AS/NZS 1768 using an earthing/bonding conductor with green/yellow insulation; and
- (b) the cross-sectional area of the earthing/bonding conductors between the surge suppression device and the main earthing bar, terminal or connection in the electrical switchboard, main earthing conductor or earth electrode, as applicable, or any

other bonding point specified in AS 4262.1 or AS/NZS 1768 **shall not** be less than 6 mm².

Note 1: The connection may be made to a termination module backmount that is Connected to Protective Earth via a minimum 6 mm² green/yellow conductor.

Note 2: This type of surge suppression is sometimes referred to as 'primary protection' and should be provided at the Cabling point of entry into the Building or at the first Cable connection point within the Building (e.g. at the MDF). Refer to AS 4262.1, AS 4262.2 and AS/NZS 1768 for more information.

Note 3: The total earthing/bonding conductor length between the surge suppression device and the earthing bar, terminal or connection in the electrical switchboard should not exceed 10 m. A total earthing conductor length of 1.5 m or less is preferred for more effective Ordinary Person protection and for primary protection of any Customer Equipment Connected to the telecommunications Line.

Note 4: Additional requirements for surge suppression devices are given in Clause 10.3.

20.21.2 Surge suppression for the protection of customer equipment

Any surge suppression device provided for the protection of Customer Equipment and Connected between telecommunications Line conductors and earth—

(a) **shall** be Connected to Protective Earth in accordance with Clause 20.7 or to a suitable bonding point specified in AS 4262.2 or AS/NZS 1768 using an earthing/bonding conductor with green/yellow insulation; and

(b) the cross-sectional area of any earthing/bonding conductors **shall not** be less than 2.5 mm².

Note 1: This type of surge suppression is sometimes referred to as 'secondary protection' and should be provided in addition to, and not as a substitute for, the surge suppression ('primary protection') described in Clause 20.21.1. Secondary protection is normally provided within, or as close as possible to, the equipment. Refer to AS 4262.1, AS 4262.2 and AS/NZS 1768 for more information.

Note 2: The earthing/bonding conductor should be as short as possible (preferably no longer than 1.5 m) for more effective equipment protection.

Note 3: Surge suppression devices may be Connected to a TRC or other earth reference within Customer Equipment to minimise electric stress between conductive elements during voltage surge conditions. Such devices are intrinsic to the design of the Customer Equipment and require no specific action by the installer.

Table 7
Minimum conductor sizes for earthing or bonding

Metallic barriers/parts

Relevant Clause	Function	Colour	Minimum size (cross-sectional area)
20.17	Earthing of a metallic barrier to Protective Earth	Green/ Yellow	Minimum 2.5 mm ²
20.19	Connection of a metallic Cable tray, Conduit, Trunking system, distribution frame, backmount, Enclosure, catenary support or the steel wire armouring of an SWA Cable to Protective Earth	Green/ Yellow	Minimum 2.5 mm ² (except where used for connection of surge suppression for protection of Ordinary Persons)

CES

20.11.2 20.12.4	Connection from the Equipotential Bonding point on the earthing system of the electrical installation to the CET (bonding method 1 or 2) or the bar, terminal or backmount of the Distributor (bonding method 3)	Green/ Yellow	Size for allowable resistance Minimum 6 mm ²
20.12.2 20.12.4 20.21.1	Connection from the CET (bonding method 1 or 2) or the bar, terminal or backmount in the Distributor (bonding method 3) to any Distributor or other connection device that contains surge suppression for the protection of Ordinary Persons	Green/ Yellow	Size for allowable resistance Minimum 6 mm ²
20.12.2 20.12.4 20.21.2	Connection from the CET to any Distributor or other connection device that does not contain surge suppression for protection of Ordinary Persons	Green/ Yellow	Size for allowable resistance Minimum 2.5 mm ²
20.12.2 20.12.4	Connection from any Distributor to any other Distributor or CAE earthing bar or terminal	Green/ Yellow	Size for allowable resistance Minimum 2.5 mm ²

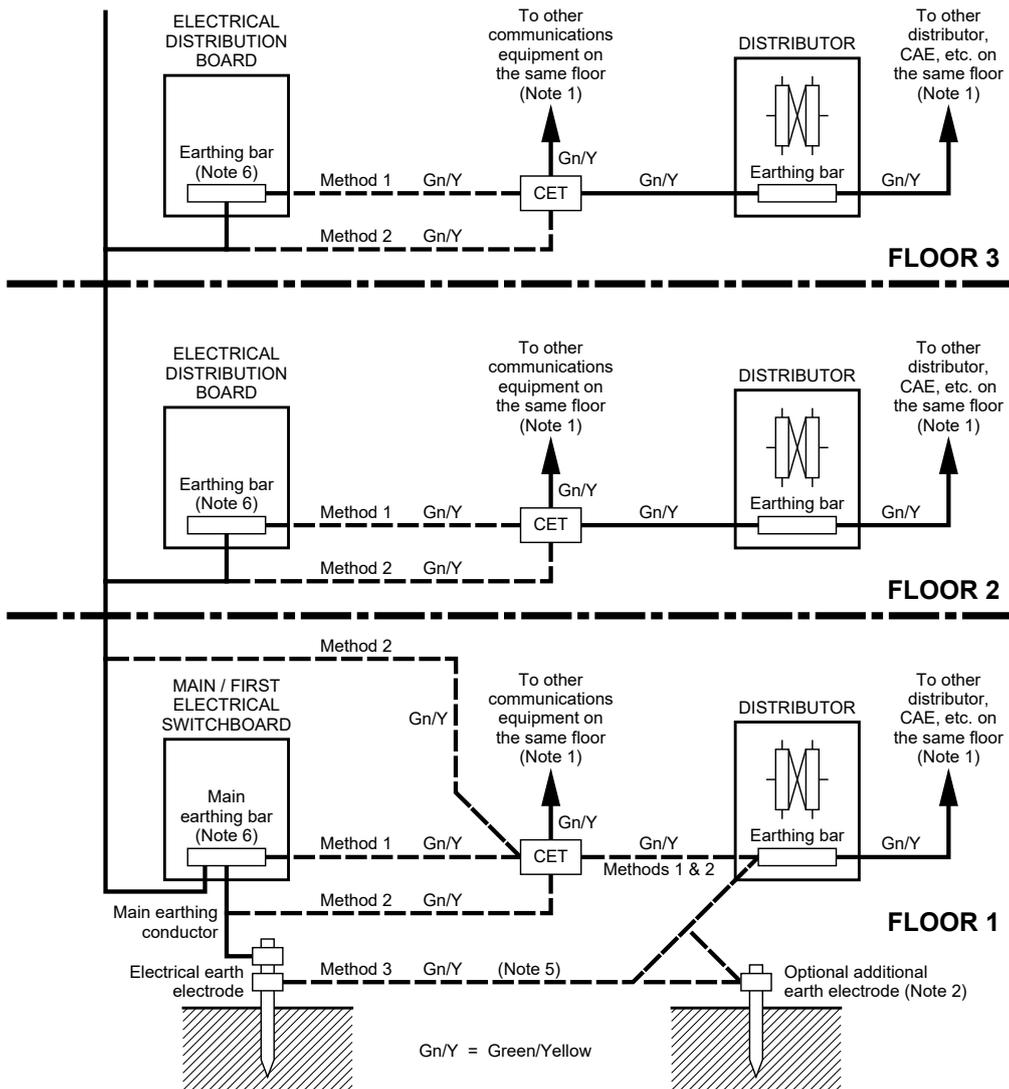
TRC

20.11.2 20.13.9	Connection from the Equipotential Bonding point on the earthing system of the electrical installation to the TRC link bar at the Designated Distributor	Green/ Yellow	Size for allowable resistance Minimum 6 mm ²
20.13.5 20.13.11	Connection from the TRC link bar of any Distributor to the TRC link bar of any other Distributor or CAE	Violet	Size for allowable resistance Minimum 2.5 mm ²
20.13.8.5	TRC connection from the Designated Distributor to a TFEE (where provided)	Violet	Minimum 4 mm ²

Surge suppression

20.11.2.1 20.11.2.4 20.21.1	Connection of a surge suppression device for the protection of Ordinary Persons	Green/ Yellow	Size for allowable resistance Minimum 6 mm ²
20.21.2	Connection of a surge suppression device for the protection of Customer Equipment	Green/ Yellow	Minimum 2.5 mm ²
20.20	Earthing at a Distributor terminating Outdoor Cabling	Green/ Yellow	Minimum 6 mm ²

Note: Where Customer Equipment requiring connection to a TRC or CES is Connected to roof antennae or similar exposed equipment, consideration should be given to the need to dimension the TRC or CES to carry lightning down current.



Note 1: CES conductors should only be used for earthing of equipment in the same floor or section of the Building where the CES is equipotentially bonded to the electrical earthing system.

Note 2: There is no restriction on connecting an additional earth electrode to the communications bonding conductor as long as it is installed in accordance with the relevant requirements of AS/NZS 3000. However, AS/NZS 3000 does not support the installation of an earth electrode at a Building that does not already have an earth electrode, e.g. where the main switchboard and electrical earth electrode are installed at a pole or another Building.

Any additional earth electrode should be Connected by means of a looped connection to a single earth clamp attached to the electrode and not by means of two earth clamps on the additional electrode.

Note 3: Where surge suppression devices are installed, the total earthing conductor length between the device and the earthing bar in the electrical switchboard should not exceed 10 m. A total earthing/bonding conductor length of 1.5 m or less is preferred for more effective protection of Ordinary Persons and for protection of Customer Equipment Connected to the telecommunications Line.

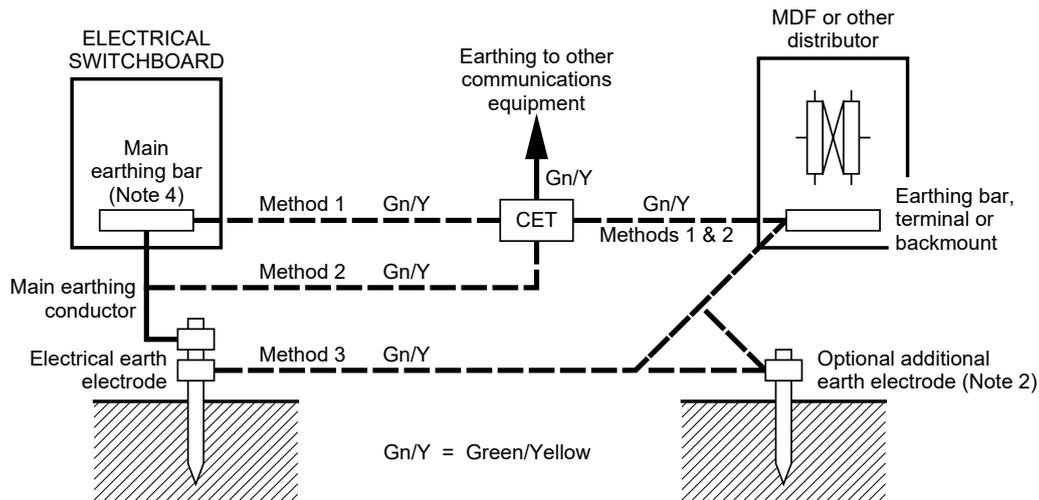
Note 4: The earthing conductor to any Distributor may be cabled from either the CET or another Distributor, as long as the resistance limit of Clause 20.12.4 is not exceeded.

Note 5: Bonding method 3 is only available at the switchboard at which the electrical earth electrode is installed.

Note 6: Only a licensed electrical worker may make any connection in the electrical switchboard.

Figure 4

Typical CES for commercial premises with distributed cabling



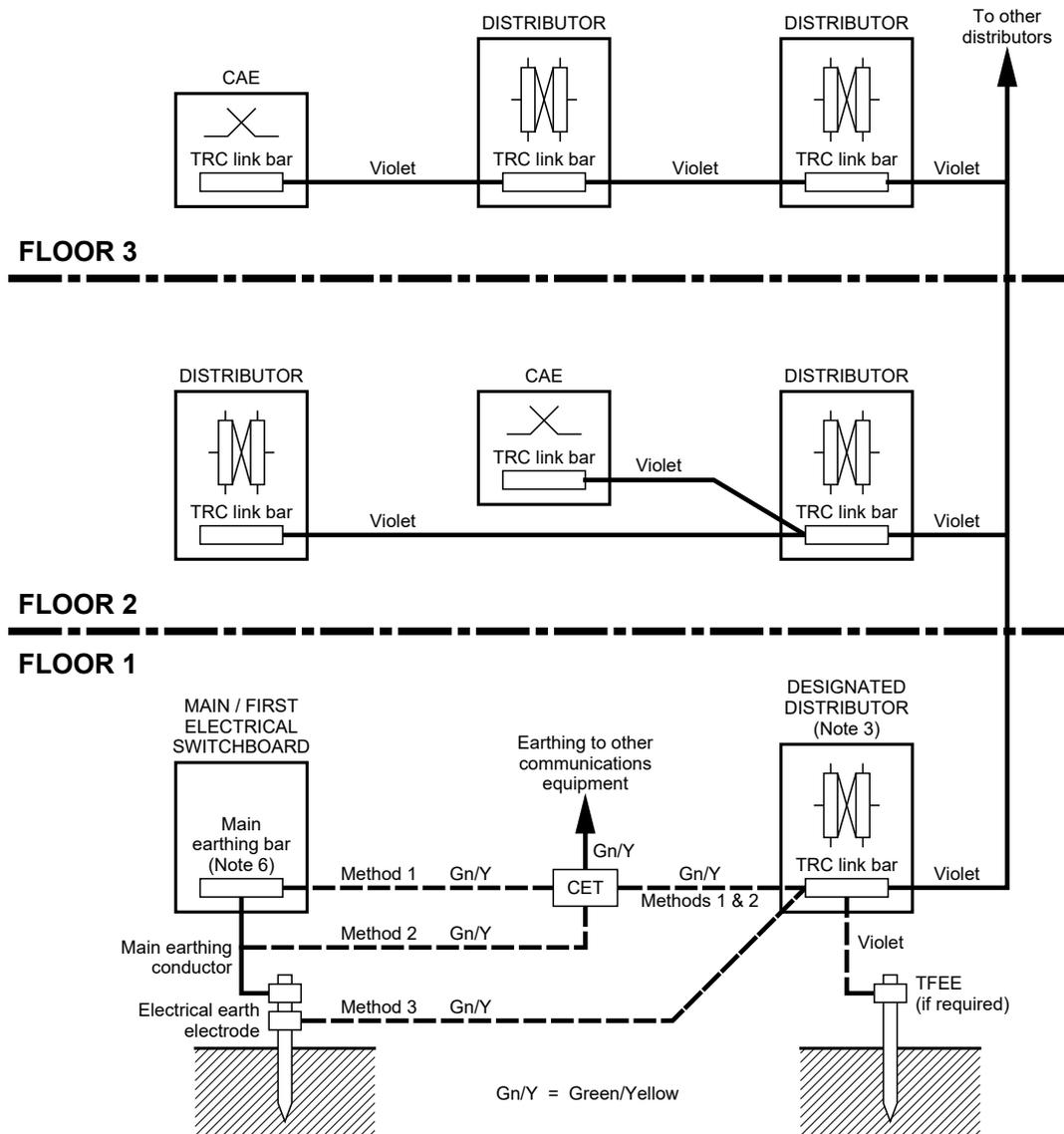
Note 1: In this configuration, the CET was formerly known as a 'bonding terminal'.

Note 2: There is no restriction on connecting an additional earth electrode to the communications bonding conductor as long as it is installed in accordance with the relevant requirements of AS/NZS 3000. However, AS/NZS 3000 does not support the installation of an earth electrode at a Building that does not already have an earth electrode, e.g. where the main switchboard and electrical earth electrode are installed at a pole or another Building. Any additional earth electrode should be Connected by means of a looped connection to a single earth clamp attached to the electrode and not by means of two earth clamps on the additional electrode.

Note 3: Where surge suppression devices are installed, the total earthing conductor length between the device and the main earthing bar or connection in the electrical switchboard should not exceed 10 m. A total earthing/bonding conductor length of 1.5 m or less is preferred for more effective protection of Ordinary Persons and for protection of Customer Equipment Connected to the telecommunications Line.

Note 4: Domestic switchboards do not always contain a main earthing bar. In such cases, the Equipotential Bonding connection is made to the main earthing terminal or conductor within the switchboard and not to the neutral bar. Only a licensed electrical worker may make any connection in the electrical switchboard.

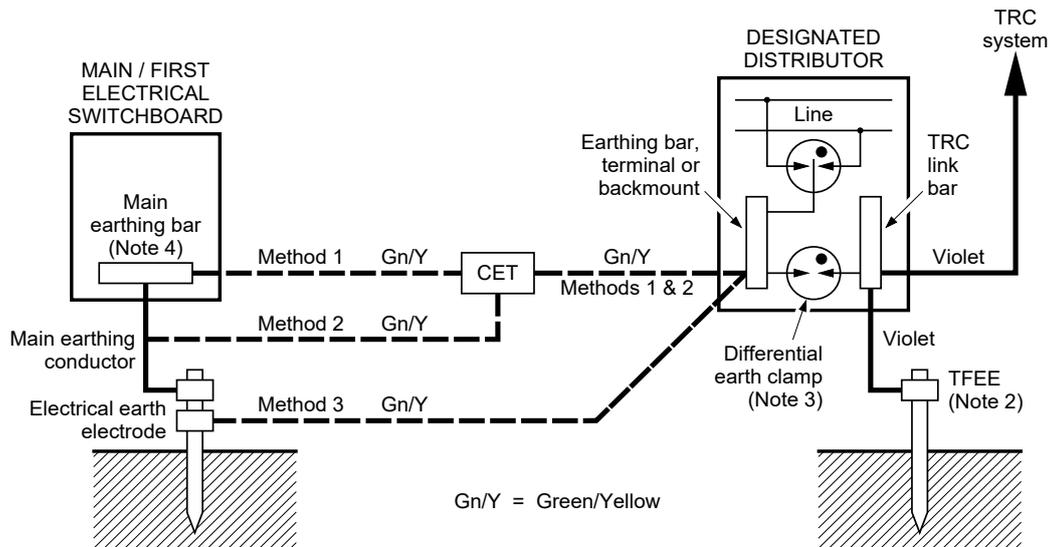
Figure 5
Earthing options for a small distributor installation
(e.g. domestic or small business premises)



- Note 1: On installations made prior to October 1990, the TRC is coloured red.
- Note 2: In this configuration, the CET was formerly known as a 'bonding terminal'.
- Note 3: The Designated Distributor is a Distributor, near the main or first electrical switchboard in the Building, designated by the Cabling Provider as the most appropriate Distributor for distribution of the TRC system. This Distributor may or may not be an MDF.
- Note 4: Where surge suppression devices are installed at the Designated Distributor, the total earthing conductor length between the device and the main earthing bar in the electrical switchboard should not exceed 10 m. A total earthing/bonding conductor length of 1.5 m or less is preferred for more effective protection of Ordinary Persons and for protection of Customer Equipment Connected to the telecommunications Line.
- Note 5: In situations where there is excessive noise voltage on the earthing system of the electrical installation or excessive direct current in the communications bonding conductor (refer to Appendix E), it may be necessary to make the Equipotential Bonding via a Differential Earth Clamp (e.g. gas filled surge suppression device) as shown in Figure 7.
- Note 6: Only a licensed electrical worker may make any connection in the electrical switchboard.
- Note 7: Where the electrical earth electrode is not located in the same Building as the Designated Distributor (e.g. AC Mains supply and earth fed from another Building), the TFE (where required) is to be Connected in accordance with Figure 8.

Figure 6

Typical TRC system for commercial premises with distributed cabling



Note 1: Where surge suppression devices are installed at the Designated Distributor, the total earthing conductor length between the device and the main earthing bar in the electrical switchboard should not exceed 10 m. A total earthing/bonding conductor length of 1.5 m or less is preferred for more effective protection of Ordinary Persons and for protection of Customer Equipment Connected to the telecommunications Line.

Note 2: The resistance of the TFE to the general mass of earth should not exceed 30 Ω . The operational requirements of the Customer Equipment may require a lower resistance.

Note 3: Where the TRC is equipotentially bonded to the earthing system of the electrical installation via a Differential Earth Clamp:

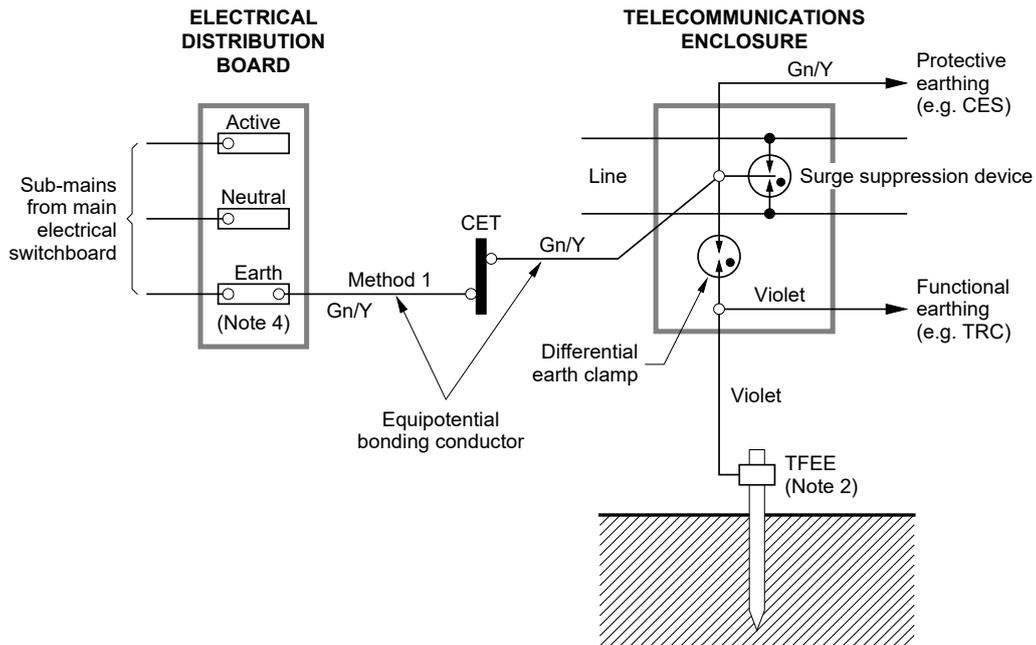
- (a) The Differential Earth Clamp is to be Connected in a way that it is not required to conduct surge current to the electrical earthing system from any surge suppression device Connected to a telecommunications Line.
- (b) All TRC link bars and terminations are to be enclosed or located to prevent Customer access.
- (c) Where the maximum limiting voltage of the Differential Earth Clamp exceeds ELV limits, all TRC link bars and terminations are to be suitably labelled to warn workers of possible voltage differences between the TRC and other earths, e.g. 'WARNING! This TRC is not directly bonded to the electrical earthing system. A hazardous voltage may exist between the TRC and other earthed objects.'

Note 4: Only a licensed electrical worker may make any connection in the electrical switchboard.

Note 5: Refer to Clause 20.13.9.2.

Figure 7

Equipotential bonding of TRC to the electrical earthing system via a differential earth clamp (where excessive noise or direct current)



Note 1: Where surge suppression devices are installed, the total earthing conductor length between the device and the earthing bar in the electrical switchboard should not exceed 10 m. A total earthing/bonding conductor length of 1.5 m or less is preferred for more effective protection of Ordinary Persons and for protection of Customer Equipment Connected to the telecommunications Line.

Note 2: The resistance of the TFE to the general mass of earth should not exceed 30 Ω. The operational requirements of the Customer Equipment may require a lower resistance.

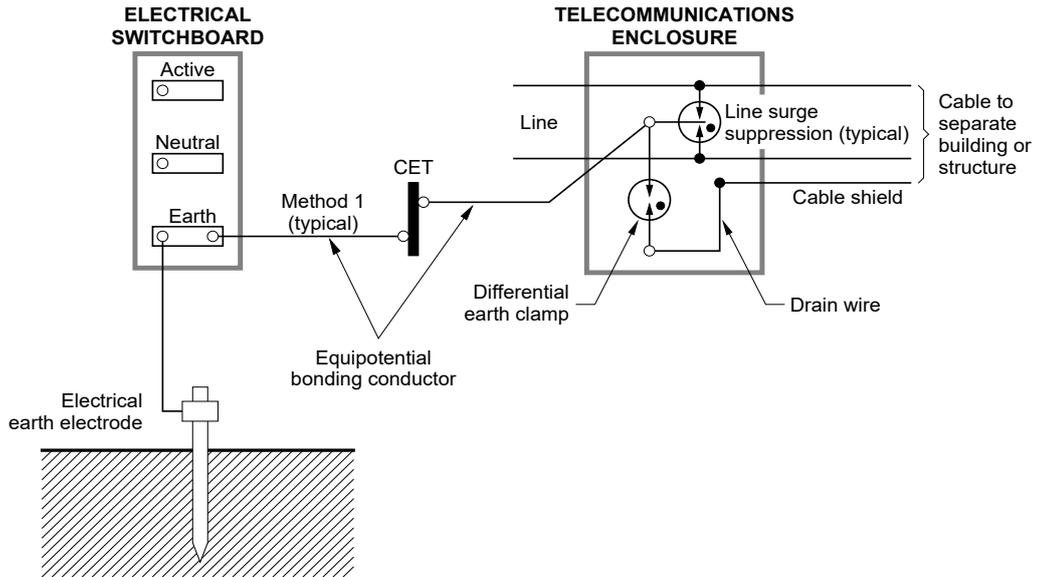
Note 3: Where the maximum limiting voltage of the Differential Earth Clamp exceeds ELV limits, all functional earthing bars and terminals are to be suitably labelled to warn workers of possible voltage differences between the Functional Earth and other earths, e.g. 'WARNING! This earth is not directly bonded to the electrical earthing system. A hazardous voltage may exist between this earth and other earthed objects.'

Note 4: Only a licensed electrical worker may make any connection in the electrical switchboard.

Note 5: Refer to Clause 20.13.8.6.

Figure 8

Installation of a TFE where the electrical earth electrode is located at another building or structure



Note: Refer to Clause 20.18.4.

Figure 9

Connection of a metallic cable shield (or moisture barrier) of an underground or aerial customer cable at a building or structure

APPENDIX

A Restricted zones in damp locations (NORMATIVE)

A.1 A location containing a bath or shower

The restricted zone for a location containing a bath or shower is comprised of the following areas:

- (a) For a bath, within a vertical plane circumscribed by a horizontal distance of 600 mm from the internal rim of the bath and a vertical distance of 2.5 m from the floor or to the height of the ceiling, whichever is the lower.
- (b) For a shower—
 - (i) within a vertical plane circumscribed by a horizontal distance of 1.8 m from the shower fixed plumbing connection and a vertical distance of 2.5 m from the floor or to the height of the ceiling, whichever is the lower; or
 - (ii) within a vertical plane circumscribed by a horizontal distance of 600 mm from the inside edge of a fixed partition with a height no less than 1.8 m from the floor or the height of the shower fixed plumbing connection, whichever is the greater, and a vertical distance of 2.5 m from the floor or to the height of the ceiling, whichever is the lower.
- (c) Within 300 mm of the floor at any point in the room containing the bath or shower.

The restricted zone does not extend beyond the boundaries of the room containing the bath or shower.

The restricted zone is pictorially represented for typical situations in Figures A1 to A4.

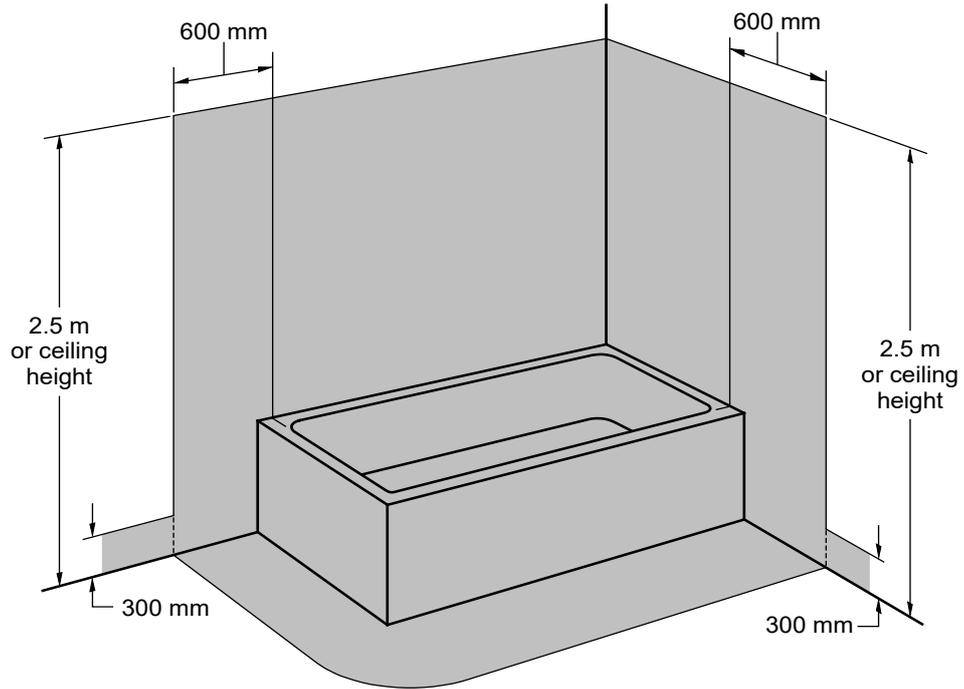


Figure A1
Bath without a shower

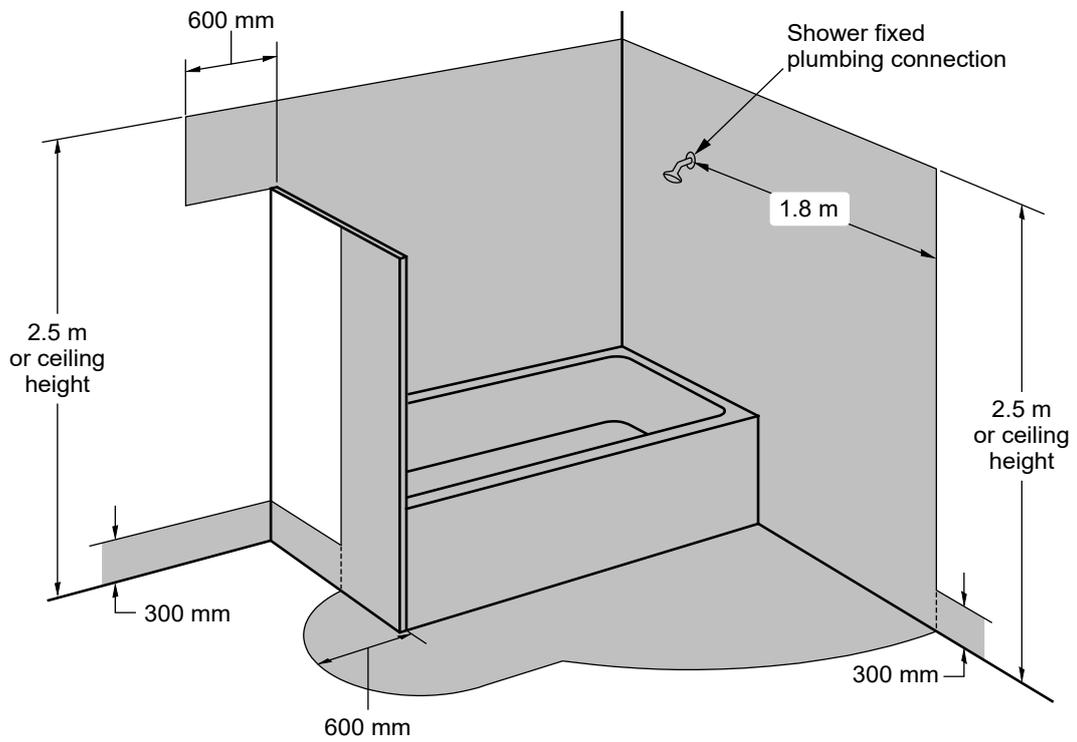


Figure A2
Bath with a shower and fixed partition

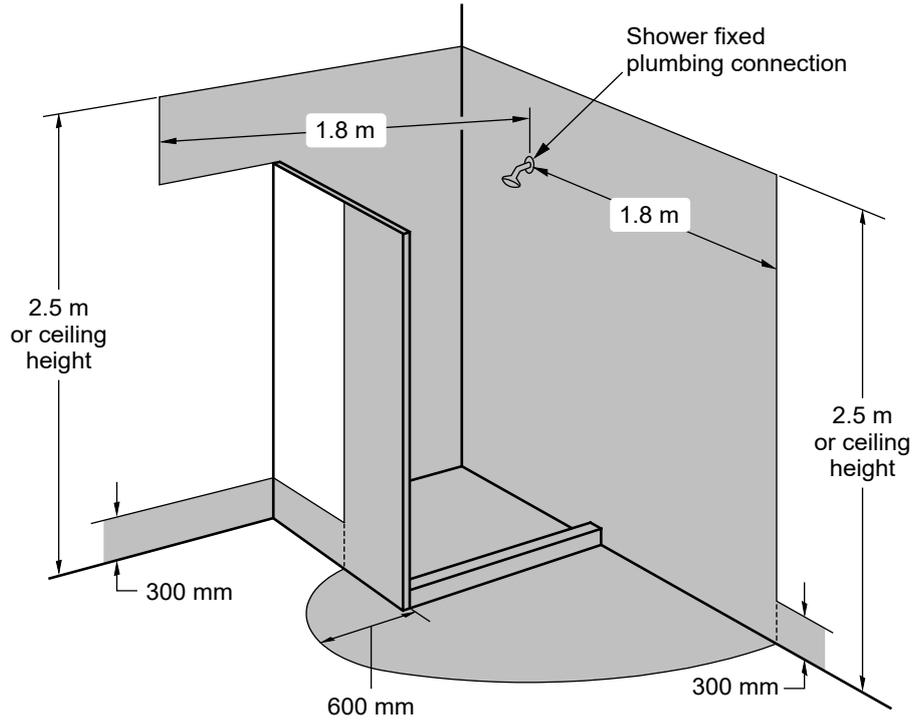


Figure A3
Shower with a fixed partition

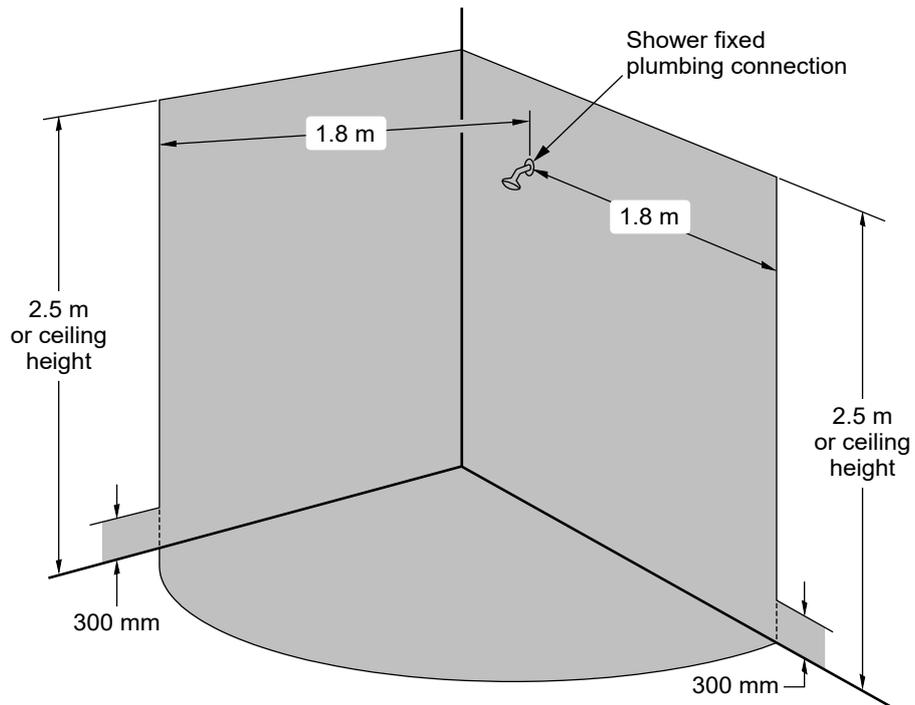


Figure A4
Shower without a fixed partition

A.2 A location containing a basin or fixed water container not exceeding 45 litres per container

The restricted zone for a location containing a basin or fixed water container not exceeding 45 litres per container is described as follows:

- (a) Within a vertical plane circumscribed by a horizontal distance of 150 mm and a vertical distance of 400 mm from the internal rim of the water container.
- (b) Within 300 mm of the floor at any point in the room containing the basin or fixed water container.

The restricted zone is pictorially represented in Figure A5.

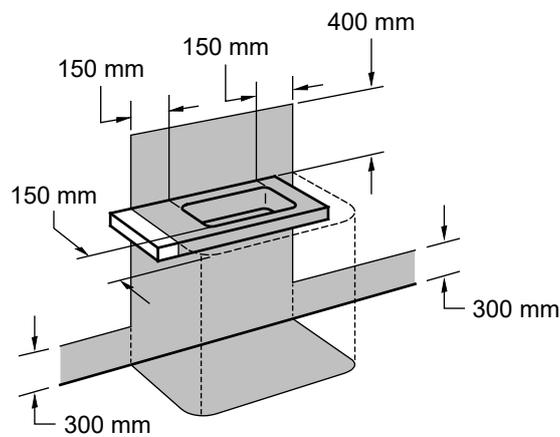


Figure A5

**Hand basin or fixed water container not exceeding
45 litres capacity per container**

A.3 A location containing a tub or fixed water container exceeding 45 litres

The restricted zone for a location containing a tub or fixed water container exceeding 45 litres is described as follows:

- (a) Within a vertical plane circumscribed by a horizontal distance of 500 mm and a vertical distance of 1 m from internal rim of the water container.
- (b) Within 300 mm of the floor at any point in the room containing the basin or fixed water container.

The restricted zone is pictorially represented in Figure A6.

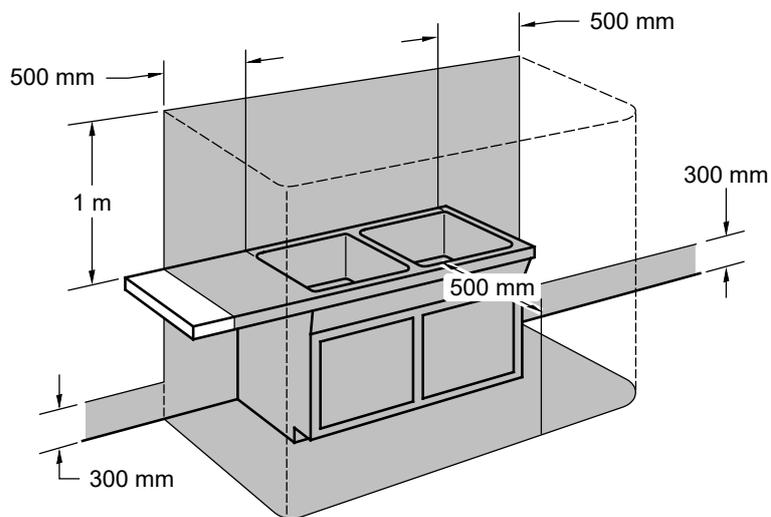


Figure A6

Laundry tub or fixed water container exceeding 45 litres capacity

APPENDIX

B Common cable colour codes (INFORMATIVE)

Cables are required by AS/CA S008 to have some method of coding that enables pairs, conductors and optical fibres to be visually distinguishable from one another.

Common colour codes for various types of Cable are provided in Tables B1 to B7. While it is not mandatory for Cable manufacturers to follow these colour codes, they usually do.

Where a Cable colour code does not correspond to the colours in the tables in this Appendix, the colour code provided by the manufacturer of the Cable should be followed as required by Clause 5.2 of this Standard.

Table B1

2-pair (quad) and 3-pair telephone cable colour code

Pair number	Colours
1	White Blue
2	Red Black
3	Orange Green

Table B2

4-pair cable colour code

Pair number	Colour code variations		
1	White Blue	White-Blue Blue	White-Blue * Blue-White *
2	White Orange	White-Orange Orange	White-Orange * Orange-White *
3	White Green	White-Green Green	White-Green * Green-White *
4	White Brown	White-Brown Brown	White-Brown * Brown-White *

* The first-named colour is the predominant colour

Table B3

Colour code for up to 100-pair cables (20-pair units)

Pair number	A Leg (L+)	B Leg (L-)	Pair range	Mate colour
1	White	Blue	1-20	White
2	White	Orange		
3	White	Green		
4	White	Brown		
5	White	Grey	21-40	Yellow
6	White	Blue-White		
7	White	Blue-Orange		
8	White	Blue-Green		
9	White	Blue-Brown		
10	White	Blue-Grey		
11	White	Orange-White	41-60	Black
12	White	Orange-Green		
13	White	Orange-Brown	61-80	Violet
14	White	Orange-Grey		
15	White	Green-White		
16	White	Green-Brown		
17	White	Green-Grey	81-100	Red
18	White	Brown-White		
19	White	Brown-Grey		
20	White	Grey-White		

Note: These Cables are normally constructed using layer stranding, with the pair count sequence commencing from the centre and progressing through successive outer layers.

Table B4

Colour code for up to 100-pair cables (25-pair units)

Pair number	Mate	Colour	Pair range	Whipping colour
1	White	Blue	1-25	Blue
2	White	Orange		
3	White	Green		
4	White	Brown		
5	White	Grey		
6	Red	Blue	26-50	Orange
7	Red	Orange		
8	Red	Green		
9	Red	Brown		
10	Red	Grey		
11	Black	Blue	51-75	Green
12	Black	Orange		
13	Black	Green		
14	Black	Brown		
15	Black	Grey		
16	Yellow	Blue	76-100	Brown
17	Yellow	Orange		
18	Yellow	Green		
19	Yellow	Brown		
20	Yellow	Grey		
21	Violet	Blue		
22	Violet	Orange		
23	Violet	Green		
24	Violet	Brown		
25	Violet	Grey		

Note 1: 50 to 100 pair Cables are constructed with 25 pair sub-units and coloured whipping.

Note 2: The mate conductor may include a thin band of the corresponding colour, while the coloured conductor may have a thin band of the corresponding mate colour.

Note 3: At installation, each of the whippings should be tied around each bundle at the end of the Cable sheath to maintain the bundle identification.

Table B5

Colour code for up to 100-pair cables (10-pair units)

Pair number	A Leg (L+)	B Leg (L-)	Pair range	Whipping colour
1	White	Blue	1-10	Blue
2	White	Orange	11-20	Orange
3	White	Green	21-30	Green
4	White	Brown	31-40	Brown
5	White	Grey	41-50	Grey
6	Red	Blue	51-60	Blue-White
7	Red	Orange	61-70	Orange-White
8	Red	Green	71-80	Green-White
9	Red	Brown	81-90	Brown-White
10	Red	Grey	91-100	Grey-White

Note 1: The Cable pairs may have a very light twist and care is required, when stripping the Cable sheath and fanning out the pairs, that the mates do not separate from their primary colours and get mixed up.

Note 2: At installation, each of the whippings should be tied around each bundle at the end of the Cable sheath to maintain the bundle identification.

Table B6

Colour code for up to 200-pair cables (10-pair units)

Pair number	A Leg (L+)	B Leg (L-)	Pair range	Whipping colour
1	White	Blue	1-10	Blue-White
2	White	Orange	11-20	Orange-White
3	White	Green	21-30	Green-White
4	White	Brown	31-40	Brown-White
5	White	Grey	41-50	Grey-White
6	Red	Blue	51-60	Blue-Blue
7	Red	Orange	61-70	Orange-Orange
8	Red	Green	71-80	Green-Green
9	Red	Brown	81-90	Brown-Brown
10	Red	Grey	91-100	Grey-Grey
			101-110	White-White
			111-120	Red-Red
			121-130	Yellow-Yellow
			131-140	Violet-Violet
			141-150	Black-Black
			151-160	Blue-Red
			161-170	Orange-Red
			171-180	Green-Red
			181-190	Brown-Red
			191-200	Grey-Red

Note 1: The Cable pairs may have a very light twist and care is required, when stripping the Cable sheath and fanning out the pairs, that the mates do not separate from their primary colours and get mixed up.

Note 2: At installation, each of the whippings should be tied around each bundle at the end of the Cable sheath to maintain the bundle identification.

Table B7
Optical fibre colour code

Fibre number	Colour
1	Blue
2	Orange
3	Green
4	Brown
5	Grey
6	White
7	Red
8	Black
9	Yellow
10	Violet
11	Pink
12	Aqua

Note 1: This colour code applies to both loose tube and tight buffered fibre.

Note 2: For stranded (multiple) loose tube construction, the tube colour sequence is the same as the fibre colour sequence.

APPENDIX

C Telecommunications outlets (INFORMATIVE)

C.1 Introduction

A Telecommunications Outlet (TO) typically consists of a Wall Plate, housing or other mounting device containing a Socket or Sockets. In some cases, the Socket is an integral part of the Wall Plate or housing.

This Appendix describes three distinct types of Socket used in Australia for Telecommunications Outlets and some design variations within each type.

C.2 Socket types

The most common types of Socket used for Telecommunications Outlets in Australia are the following:

- (a) 8 position (8P) modular.
- (b) 6 position (6P) modular.
- (c) 600 series.

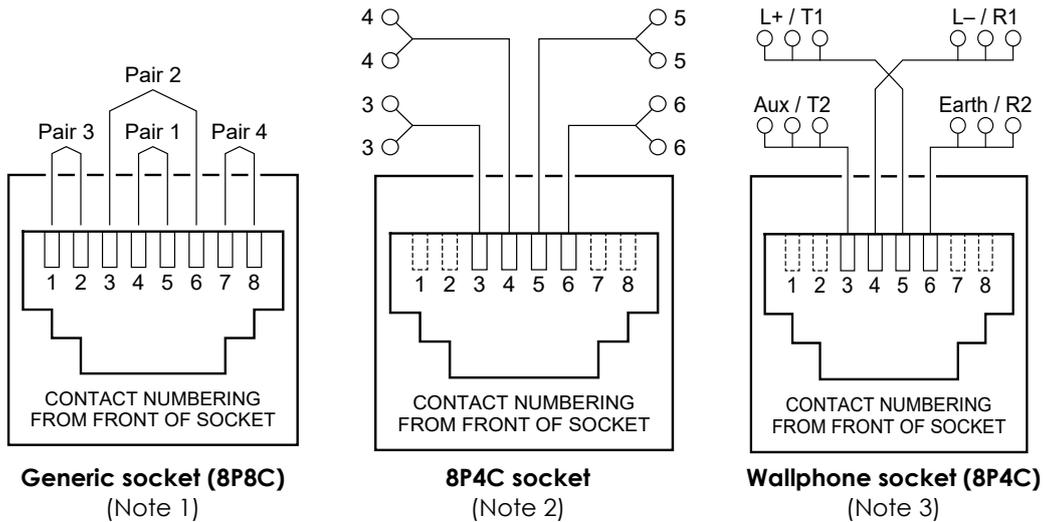
8P Sockets are recommended for new Cabling Work. 6P and 600 series Sockets should only be used for additions or repairs to existing installations.

Contact numbering and standard connections for these Socket types are described in Figures C1 to C3 and Tables C1 to C3.

C.3 Plug and socket compatibility

A six (6) position (6P) modular Plug should not be inserted in to an eight (8) position (8P) modular Socket, unless—

- (a) a 6P modular Plug with two extra grooves, which is designed for compatibility with 8P modular Sockets, is used (see Clause 5.7.3.2 of AS/CA S008); or
- (b) an adaptor (or '8P-to-6P Insert') is used, as per Clause 5.7.3.3 of AS/CA S008.



Note 1: Recommended 8P8C Socket pair assignments (T568A) for Generic Cabling are shown.

Note 2: With 8P4C Sockets, only the inner 4 contacts are fitted, which allows 2 conductor terminations to be provided per contact spring to support bus wiring of outlets.

Note 3: The terminals for wallphone-mounting outlets may be marked with Line designations as shown, rather than with the Socket contact numbers.

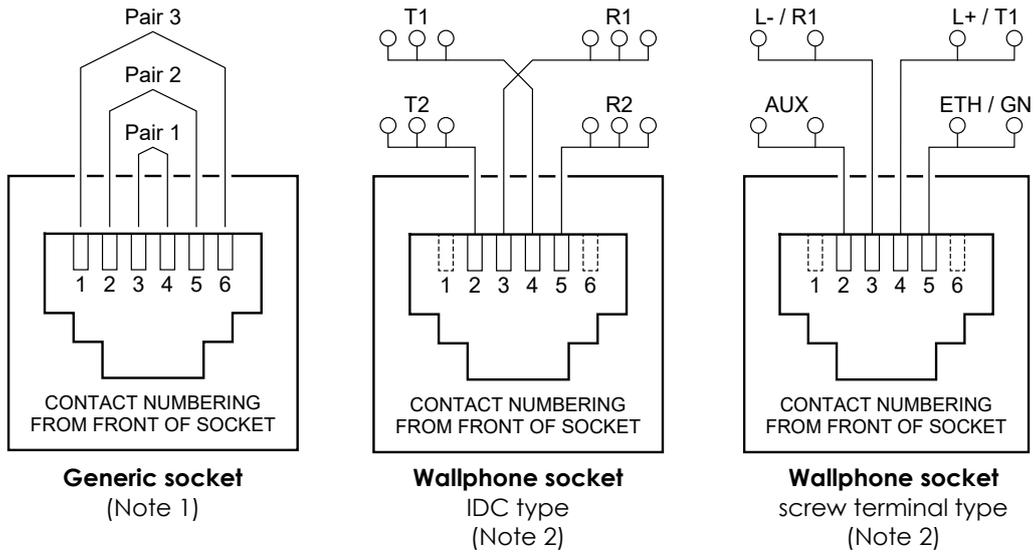
Figure C1
8P modular socket contact numbering

Table C1
8P socket contact/pair assignments and cable colour code

Contact designations			Pair No.	4-pair Cable colour code variations			3-pair Cable	2-pair Cable
L+	T1	5	1	White	White-Blue	White-Blue*	White Blue	White Blue
L-	R1	4		Blue	Blue	Blue-White*		
Aux	T2	3	2	White	White-Orange	White-Orange*	Red Black	Red Black
Earth	R2	6		Orange	Orange	Orange-White*		
-	-	1	3	White	White-Green	White-Green*	Orange Green	-
-	-	2		Green	Green	Green-White*		
-	-	7	4	White	White-Brown	White-Brown*	-	-
-	-	8		Brown	Brown	Brown-White*		

* The first-named colour is the predominant colour

Note: With bus-wired (e.g. telephone) outlets, only working pairs should be Connected to the Socket (e.g. pair 1 for one Line). With Generic Cabling (i.e. Cabling star wired from a Distributor), all pairs should be terminated on the Socket.



Note 1: The outer contact springs (1 and 6) are not fitted on some 6P modular Sockets.

Note 2: The terminals for wallphone-mounting outlets may be marked with Line designations as shown, rather than with the Socket contact numbers.

Figure C2
6P modular socket contact numbering

Table C2
6P socket contact/pair assignments and cable colour code

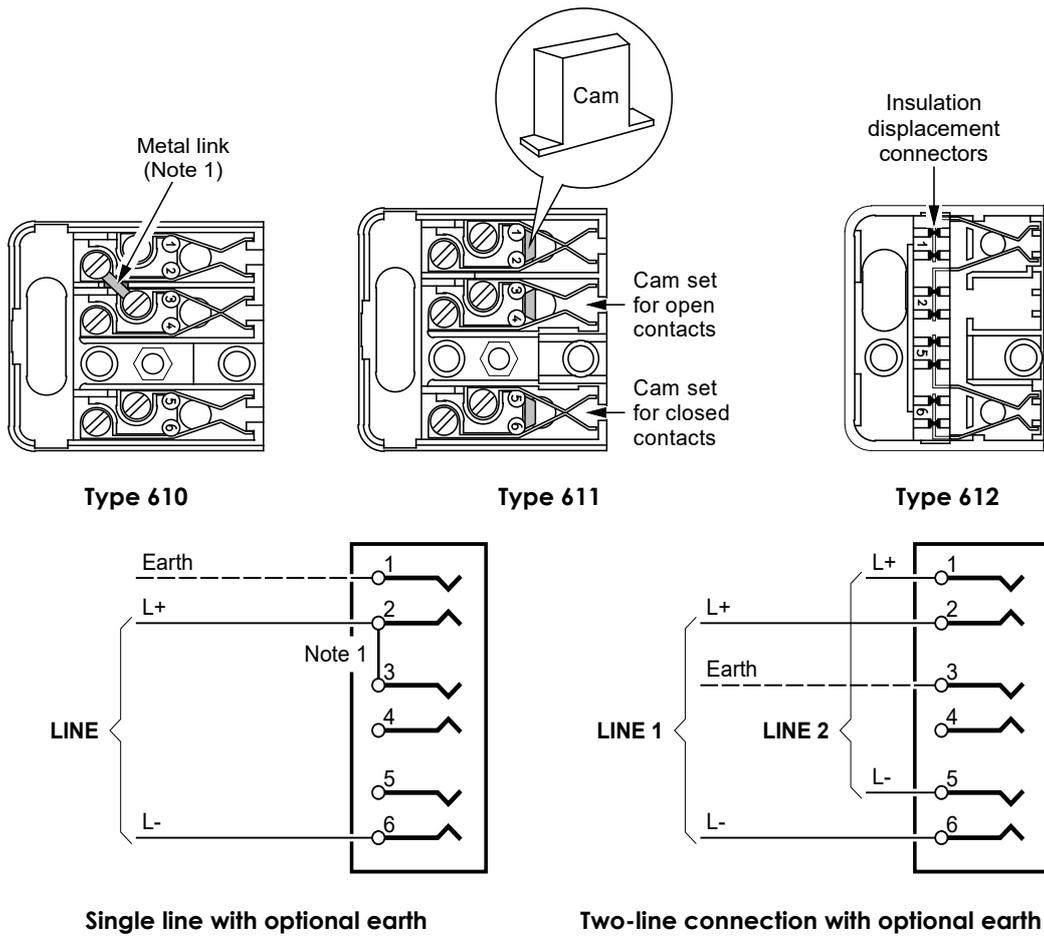
Contact designations			Pair No.	Colour code variations		3-pair Cable	2-pair Cable
T1	T1	4	1	White-Blue	White-Blue*	White Blue	White Blue
R1	R1	3		Blue	Blue-White*		
R2	ETH	5	2	White-Orange	White-Orange*	Red Black	Red Black
T2	AUX	2		Orange	Orange-White*		
-	-	6	3	White-Green	White-Green*	Orange Green	-
-	-	1		Green	Green-White*		

* The first-named colour is the predominant colour

Note 1: Only working pairs should be Connected to the Socket (e.g. pair 1 for one Line).

Note 2: The colour code indicated for Pair 2 (Red/Black) of 2-pair or 3-pair Cable is to maintain adjacent contacts at the same polarity for multi-Line connections based on the standard colour code for these Cables.

Note 3: For Ethernet delivery, the use of Pins 6 and 1 may not be appropriate.



Note 1: A metal link or strap is required between terminals 2 and 3 with older Customer Equipment to provide a circuit for the ringer (bell).

Note 2: Contact springs 3 and 4 are not fitted with some Sockets (e.g. type 612).

Figure C3
600 series socket connections

Table C3
600 series socket contact/pair assignments and cable colour code

Contact No.			Pair No.	4-pair Cable colour code variations			3-pair Cable	2-pair Cable
612	611	610						
2	2	2	1	White Blue	White-Blue Blue	White-Blue* Blue-White*	White Blue	White Blue
6	6	6		1	White Orange	White-Orange Orange	White-Orange* Orange-White*	Red Black
-	3	3	3	White Green	White-Green Green	White-Green* Green-White*	Orange Green	-
-	4	4		3	White Brown	White-Brown Brown	White-Brown* Brown-White*	-

* The first-named colour is the predominant colour

Note: Only working pairs should be Connected to the Socket (e.g. pair 1 for one Line).

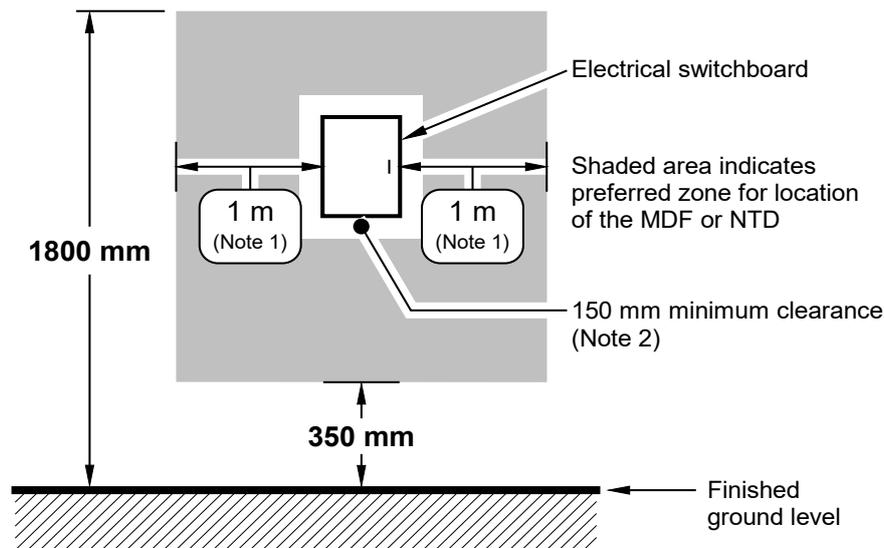
APPENDIX

D Recommended access clearances for MDFs and NTDs (INFORMATIVE)

Suitable access clearances are required around an MDF or NTD to provide safe and convenient access by Carriers, Carriage Service Providers, Cabling Providers and, in some cases, Customers (e.g. where Customer testing is supported by the MDF or NTD). The access space is necessary so a person has sufficient head and shoulder room to terminate Cables and to connect or test telecommunications services. The area above, below and beside the MDF or NTD should not contain any protruding obstacles that may require any person to stoop or twist their body in order to gain access to Cables or terminations within the MDF or NTD.

Figures D1 to D4 show the minimum and maximum height and clearances recommended to ensure that the installation complies with this Standard and to ensure safe and convenient access.

Note: An NTD is normally installed by the Carrier but the Cabling Provider should maintain suitable NTD access clearances when installing Customer Cabling or Customer Equipment.



Note 1: An MDF is installed by the Cabling Provider. An NTD is normally installed by the Carrier (however, the Cabling Provider still needs to know where the NTD will be located in order to provide the Customer Cabling that will be Connected to it). It is recommended that an MDF or NTD be installed within 1 m of the electrical switchboard for ready location, access and to enable effective surge suppression to be provided. Care needs to be taken to avoid Building fixtures such as downpipes, water pipes/taps, etc. and fences that adjoin the Building.

Note 2: The 150 mm clearance is an operational clearance (e.g. to allow for opening of the door/cover of the MDF/NTD or future expansion), and is not a safety requirement.

Figure D1
Installation zone for a wall mounted MDF or NTD
on the external wall of a dwelling

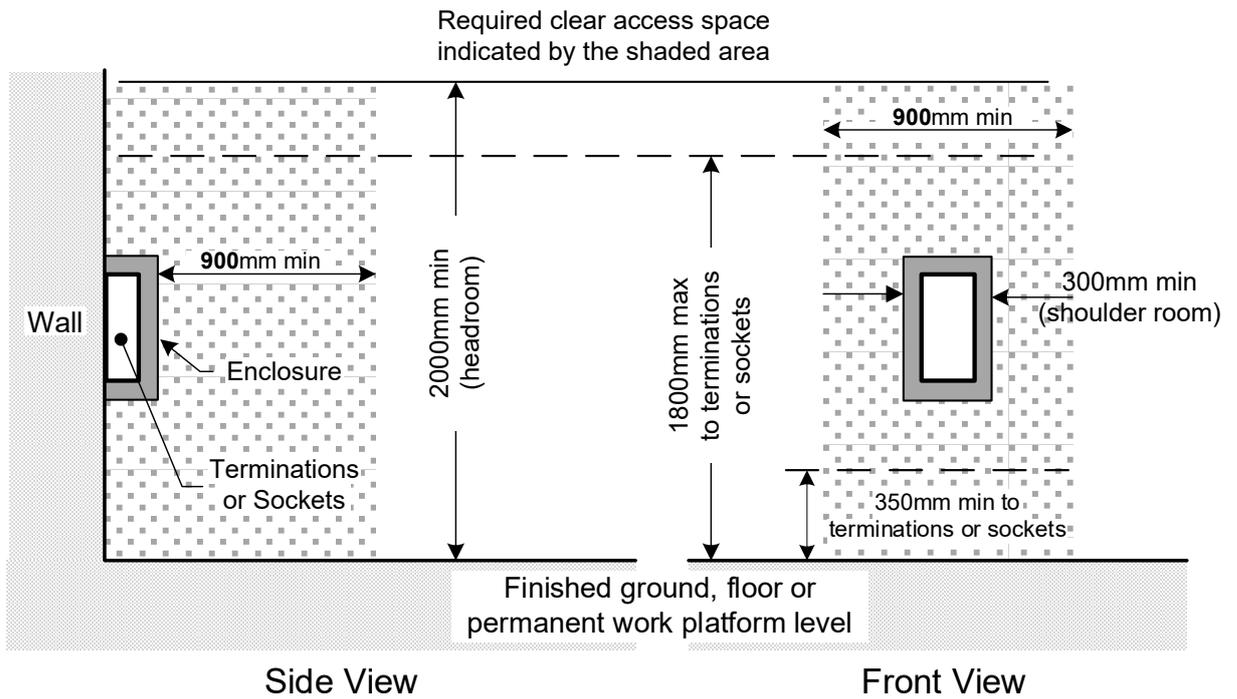
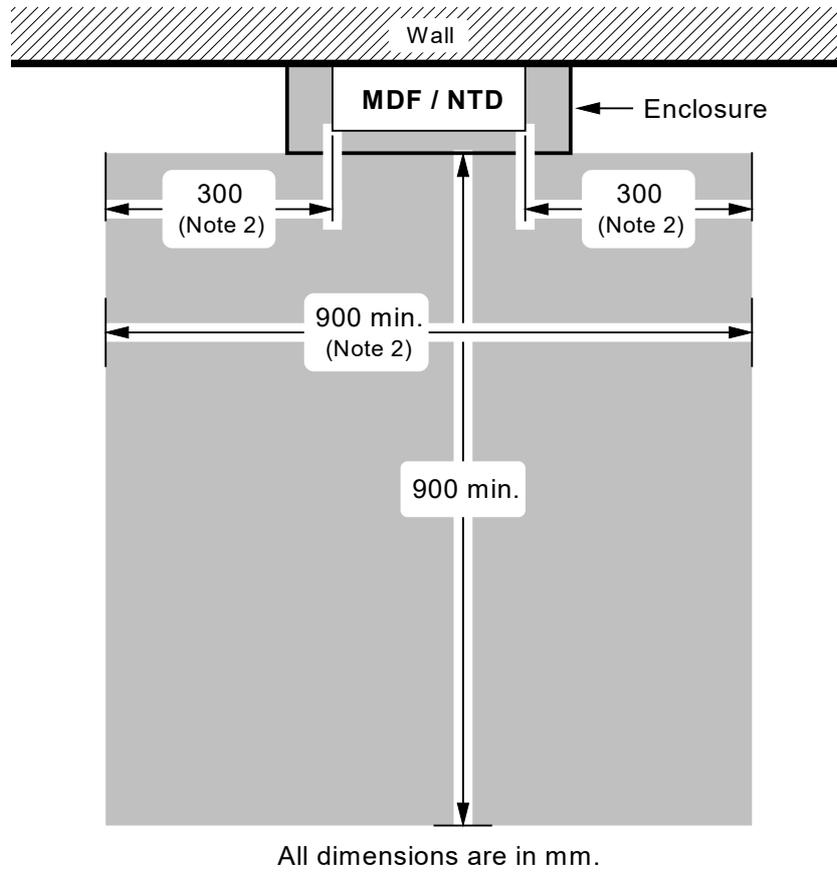


Figure D2

Access clearances for a wall mounted MDF or NTD



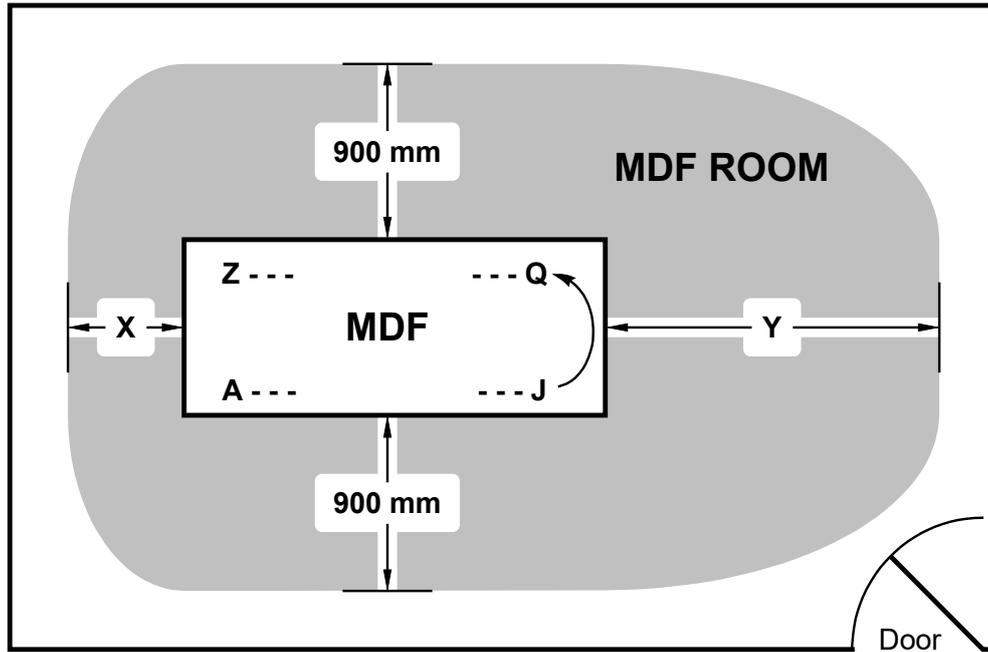
Plan view

Note 1: The shaded area indicates the space that should be kept clear of obstacles.

Note 2: The 300 mm side clearance provides 'shoulder room' for working on the MDF/NTD. The minimum required total clearance width in front of the device is 900 mm.

Figure D3

Access clearances for a wall mounted MDF or NTD



Note 1: Position the MDF within the room to obtain the required minimum clearances around it.

Note 2: The fixed end clearance, marked 'X', should be sufficient to provide 'shoulder room' for working on the MDF, i.e. a minimum of **300 mm**. However, sufficient clearance should be provided to enable ready escape from the vicinity under emergency conditions — a minimum distance of **600 mm** is recommended for this purpose. If the MDF has Cable terminations facing the end wall, a minimum distance of **900 mm** is required.

Note 3: The end clearance marked 'Y' should be sufficient to provide for MDF expansion, access and ready escape from the vicinity under emergency conditions — a minimum distance of **1200 mm** is recommended.

Note 4: A minimum frontal clearance of **900 mm** working space from the vertical face of the termination side of the MDF and a minimum vertical clearance of **2 m** from the walked-on surface are required.

Note 5: The MDF verticals are required to be designated alphabetically from left to right (i.e. in an anti-clockwise direction) as shown. A gap should be provided in the vertical designations as indicated above (e.g. **K-P**) to allow for verticals to be added later without the need to redesignate the existing verticals.

Figure D4

Access clearances for a floor mounted or 'island' MDF

APPENDIX

E Direct current in the communications bonding conductor (INFORMATIVE)

E.1 Introduction

The installation and operation of Customer Access Equipment (CAE) and other Customer Equipment may give rise to direct current being discharged to earth via the equipotential bond to the earthing system of the electrical installation. This is additional to any DC that may already exist in the earthing system.

E.2 Recommendation

To reduce the chance of additional electrolytic corrosion of the electrical earth electrode, the aggregate current flow through the electrode from all communications bonding conductors should be limited to the following:

- (a) 25 μA continuous (either polarity), i.e. the average current measured over 24 h should not exceed 600 $\mu\text{A}\cdot\text{h}$ per day.
- (b) 100 mA maximum (either polarity) for any period not exceeding 30 s.

The system designer should consider these values.

APPENDIX

F Power feeding in telecommunications networks (INFORMATIVE)

F.1 Introduction

Telecommunication Cabling may be utilised for remote Power Feeding.

The energy source for remote Power Feeding can be broken into the following three classifications:

- (a) *ES1 classification* - is either touch current limited or touch voltage limited and is considered safe for an Ordinary Person.
- (b) *ES2 classification* - is applicable when ES1 conditions have not been met. ES2 is still either touch current limited or touch voltage limited but is a higher level of touch current or touch voltage than ES1. ES2 is considered to be safe with one basic safeguard for an Ordinary Person. Providing basic safeguard requirements is the intent of this Standard.
- (c) *ES3 classification* - is applicable when ES2 conditions have not been met. ES3 is circuit voltage and circuit current limited for Generic Cabling. ES3 is classified as hazardous and requires basic and supplementary safeguards to protect an Ordinary Person and an Instructed Person. ES3 requires a skill safeguard to protect Skilled Persons.

ES1 and ES2 use touch current and touch voltages in determining their classification, which deals with touching one conductor in two places or touching one conductor and earth. Remote powering applications are often not Connected to earth and as such do not provide a return path to earth when contact is made.

Note: Touch current and touch voltage do not relate to circuit current or circuit voltage. Touch current and touch voltage relate to the safety of humans.

ES3 classification in this Standard differs from ES1 and ES2. Herein ES3 for Generic Cabling and for Special Application Cables is classified by the current flowing within a Cable and the voltage applied to the Cable as opposed to touch current and touch voltage in ES1 and ES2.

Equipment safety standards have no limits on current or voltage for ES3, however, equipment manufacturers may not always specify current and voltage limits for Special Application Cabling. An installation should use the Cable specified by the equipment manufacturer to assure the safety of the installation and its fitness for purpose.

ES3 is hazardous. The conductors of an ES3 system are required to be located or protected so that there is no access to the ES3 conductors without appropriate safeguards.

During initial installation, a Skilled Person (i.e. a registered cabler) or an Instructed Person may work on ES3 telecommunications Cabling. After initial installation and commissioning, only a Skilled Person or Instructed Person is allowed to have access to the conductors of an ES3 system.

Instructed Persons and Skilled Persons may be required to be a registered cabler and a licenced electrician.

ES3 may also be run over Generic Cabling. In this case there is a maximum circuit voltage and a maximum circuit current specified by this Standard. The ES3 Generic Cabling is classified as hazardous and is to be separated from ES1 and ES2 Cabling, ES3 Special Application Cabling and Mains Power Cabling.

Carriers or Carriage Service Providers may install equipment in Customer Premises that is powered from the distant end via the external telecommunications Line that enters the Building. Such powered equipment may also be installed as Customer Premises equipment.

In some cases, the Line voltage at Customer Premises may exceed the ES2 touch voltage limit, however, the Power Feeding circuit may limit current to ES2 current limits and therefore would be classed as ES2.

ES1, ES2 and ES3 remote Power Feeding can cause heat to rise in Cables which could be further increased under any of the following conditions:

- (a) The Cables are bundled or encapsulated in thermal insulating material in the form of Conduit or Duct.
- (b) The Cable conductors have cross-sectional area lower than 24 AWG (e.g. 28 AWG).
- (c) One or more multi-core Cables (e.g. 10 pair or higher) have multiple cores in each Cable energised to support multiple remote Power Feeding services.

F.2 Energy Source Classifications

ES1 and ES2 limits are specified in AS/NZS 62368.1.

Electrical Energy Source Class 3 (ES3):

- (a) over Generic Cabling, in this Standard, are based on—
 - (i) circuit voltage not exceeding 400 V d.c. between conductors; and
 - (ii) circuit current not exceeding that specified in AS/NZS 11801.1 or ISO/IEC 11801-1.

Where voltages and currents exceed these limits, then Special Application Cabling, as classified in Item F.2(b), should be used.

- (b) over Special Application Cabling in this Standard, are based on a voltage limit and current limit set by Cable manufacturer for the specific Cable and its installation requirements.

F.3 Application Examples

F.3.1 ES1 - applications include but are not limited to the following:

- (a) SELV.
- (b) FTTC Reverse Power Feed.

- (c) IEEE 802.3af PoE.
- (d) IEEE 802.3at Type 2 (PoE+).
- (e) IEEE 802.3bt Type 3.

Note: Applications for transmission only (e.g. Ethernet) are typically an ES1 circuit.

F.3.2 ES2 - applications include but are not limited to the following:

- (a) TNV.
- (a) ELV.
- (b) IEEE 802.3bt Type 4.
- (c) Power over HDBase-T (POH).
- (d) Analogue telephone plus ring voltage.

F.3.3 ES3 Generic Cabling - applications include but are not limited to the following:

- (a) RFT-C.
- (b) RFT-V.

F.3.4 ES3 Special Application Cabling - examples include but are not limited to the following:

- (a) LV Telecommunications.
- (b) EWIS 100 V a.c. rms.
- (c) Public address system 100V a.c. rms.

F.4 Implications for ES2 Cabling

Ordinary Persons and Instructed Persons (without precautionary instruction) should not have access to or contact with ES2.

Instructed Persons and Skilled Persons (Cabling Providers) need to be aware that ES2 circuits may exist on Telecommunications Networks and may appear on some Lines at an MDF, NTD or other Cable termination device.

While ES2 circuits under normal circumstances are not considered to be dangerous, e.g. normal ring voltage on standard telephone Lines is not considered dangerous, but they may deliver a painful shock under certain conditions. Consequently, Cabling Providers should heed the general warning notice in the introductory part of this Standard and be particularly careful when working on ladders or in restricted spaces, as physical reaction to any painful shock may result in personal injury.

F.5 Implications for ES3 generic cabling

This Standard does not permit an ES3 circuit to share a Customer Cable with an ES1 or ES2 circuit.

RFT technology using ES3 voltages is an established approach to power remote equipment located at distances ranging from hundreds of metres to tens of kilometres away. The current feed version, RFT-C, is used to power series Connected repeaters. The voltage feed version, RFT-V, is used to power Terminal Equipment. RFT-V could be found in Australia for use in Customer Equipment and may be used for Carrier services, depending on Carrier and C559 compliance requirements.

Carriers set down certain requirements for remote Power Feeding into Customer Premises to minimise the likelihood of unintentional contact with ES3 (RFT) by Cabling Providers and others. These requirements include the use of physical safeguards like separation or insulating barriers, warning labels and appropriate entries in Cable records at Cable termination points.

For more information, refer to Section 9 of C559 Part 1 (available from the Communications Alliance website at www.commsalliance.com.au).

An ES3 circuit installed in a separate Customer Cable, may share Cabling pathways, spaces and Distributors with ES1 and ES2 Customer Cabling, subject to the separation requirements of Clause 9.3.3 of this Standard.

Generic Cabling supporting or intended to support an ES3 circuit past the Network Boundary, including RFT-C, needs to address safety of Ordinary Persons, Instructed Persons and Skilled Persons.

Safeguards include physical separation of Cabling and connections in the following scenarios:

- (a) ES1 and ES2 from ES3 and Mains power Cabling.
- (b) ES3 Generic Cabling from ES1 and ES2 Cabling and ES3 Special Application Cabling and Mains power Cabling.
- (c) ES3 Special Application Cabling from ES1 and ES2 Cabling and ES3 Generic Cabling and Mains power Cabling.

Unless they have the appropriate skills, Cabling Providers should keep clear of any Cables, terminations or circuits that are labelled or identified as

- (a) ES3; or
- (b) Power Feeding circuits by a Carrier or Carriage Service Provider.

At each ES3 generic Cable termination, this Standard requires the location to be labelled and safeguarded by a rigidly-fixed insulating barrier. The Cabling Provider should ensure that adequate spatial separation is maintained between the Power Feeding terminations and any Customer Cabling terminations as set out in Clause 9.3.3 of this Standard.

The ES3 classifications in the Appendix are indicative only and are presented as worst case. If RFT Circuits are current or voltage limited to ES1 or ES2, Generic Cabling can be used. Generic Cabling can be—

- (a) Cables with a maximum conductor resistance of 0.0938 Ω /m at 20° C (e.g. 24 AWG); or
- (b) an engineered solution designed by a Registered Electrical Engineer or Registered ITEE Engineer based on—
 - (i) 400 V d.c. between conductors;
 - (ii) current as specified in AS/NZS 11801.1 or ISO/IEC 11801-1; and
 - (iii) heat rise not exceeding the temperature rating of the Cable when all pairs are energised for its intended purpose.

F.6 LV telecommunications circuits

With the introduction of the electrical energy source classifications, the 'LV telecommunications' Cabling classification is being replaced by the ES3 Generic Cabling and ES3 Special Application Cabling classifications.

An ES3 circuit is a circuit used for telecommunications purposes where the voltage or current under normal operating conditions or single fault conditions exceeds ES2 limits.

An ES3 circuit is a Hazardous Service and is required to be separated from other telecommunications circuits, LV Power and HV circuits in accordance with this Standard.

An example of an ES3 circuit is an emergency warning and intercommunication system (EWIS) typically operating at 100 V a.c.

APPENDIX

G ES3 separation of telecommunications and electrical circuits (INFORMATIVE)

The minimum separation distances required for safety between different types of telecommunications services and between these services and Mains power services for Indoor Cabling are summarised in Table G1. For specific separation requirements, refer to the relevant clauses of this Standard.

Table G1

Minimum separation distances required between different types of telecommunications and power services for safety (indoor cabling)

Dimensions in mm

Type of service		Cables						Terminations					
		ES1	ES2	ES3	LV power	HV circuit multi-core	HV circuit single core	ES1	ES2	ES3	LV power	HV circuit multi-core	HV circuit single core
Telecommunications	ES1	0	0	50 ^a	50 ^a	300 ^c	450	0	0.5	150 ^b	150 ^b	450 ^d	450 ^d
	ES2	0	0	50 ^a	50 ^a	300 ^c	450	0.5	0	150 ^b	150 ^b	450 ^d	450 ^d
	ES3	50	50	0	50 ^a	300 ^c	450	150	150	0	150 ^b	450 ^d	450 ^d
Mains Power	LV power	50 ^a	50 ^a	50 ^a	Per AS/NZS 3000			150 ^b	150 ^b	150 ^b	Per AS/NZS 3000		
	HV circuit multi-core	300 ^c	300 ^c	300 ^c				450 ^d	450 ^d	450 ^d			
	HV circuit single core	450	450	450				450 ^d	450 ^d	450 ^d			
<p>a 50 mm or a durable barrier of insulating material or metal.</p> <p>b 150 mm or a permanent, rigidly-fixed barrier of durable insulating material or earthed metal. In addition, accidental personal contact with the Hazardous Service is to be prevented by effective means.</p> <p>c The separation distance may be reduced to 150 mm if there is an interposing barrier of durable insulating material or earthed metal, which is of such dimensions that the shortest path around the barrier between the Cables is at least 175 mm.</p> <p>d A physical barrier is also required, e.g. separate Enclosures.</p>													

APPENDIX

H Hazards and Interference from HV power systems (INFORMATIVE)

H.1 Introduction

H.1.1 Types of hazards and interference related to HV

Interference from an HV Power system may be hazardous or non-hazardous. Hazardous interference may cause injury to persons or damage to equipment. Non-hazardous interference may affect service reliability (network integrity) and quality (e.g. noise). It is therefore essential to ensure that any interference is avoided or reduced to an acceptable level.

Note 1: An optical fibre Cable that does not contain Electrically Conductive Elements is immune from HV hazards and interference, Earth Potential Rise (EPR) is still a potential threat to Cabling Providers.

Note 2: Some optical fibre Cables such as steel wire armoured or composite Cables, containing Electrically Conductive Elements, may include tracer conductors and are not immune from HV hazards and interference.

H.1.2 Hazards and interference

The two main types of possible hazards and interference from HV Power systems are Earth Potential Rise (EPR) and Low Frequency Induction (LFI). EPR and LFI do not usually occur during normal power system operation but, if they do, it is usually non-hazardous (but can cause noise). However, under a phase-to-earth fault condition on the HV Power system, EPR and LFI can be hazardous (and for the remainder of this Appendix, the terms EPR and LFI refer to the hazardous levels of these conditions).

In some rural situations, electrostatic coupling between an HV Power line and telecommunications Cables that contain Electrically Conductive Elements may produce a hazard, the effect of which may be experienced during installation and repair activities. Unlike EPR and LFI, electrostatic coupling may exist under the normal operating conditions of the HV Power system.

H.1.3 Non-hazardous interference

The main types of non-hazardous interference by HV Power systems to telecommunications Cables that contain Electrically Conductive Elements are—

- (a) low-level 50 Hz a.c. voltage;
- (b) low-level higher frequency currents; and
- (c) low-level electrostatic coupling, also known as capacitive coupling.

These three types of interference may be experienced under normal operating conditions of the HV system. Low level of 50 Hz a.c. voltage may cause service malfunction, while higher frequency currents and capacitive coupling may cause nuisance audible noise in a voice service and unwanted signal swamping noise in a data service.

Other sources of HV noise interference are AC traction lines (e.g. electric trains/trams) and electric fences.

The use of effective separation and/or continuous, earthed Cable screening or shielding may reduce or totally eliminate the possibility of non-hazardous interference.

H.2 Earth potential rise (EPR)

H.2.1 What is EPR?

EPR is a condition caused by the flow of power system fault current to earth at an HV installation such as an electrical substation, HV transformer or, commonly, an HV pole with a conductive element to earth. The electrical potential of the ground near the installation rises due to the large amount of current flowing to earth through the impedance of the HV installation earthing system. This could create a hazard for a person in the EPR Hazard Zone who may be bridging the voltage gradients within the EPR Hazard Zone with their body, touching a nearby earthed object or touching a wire or termination Connected to a distant or remote earth, such as a telephone Line that is earthed at the exchange.

The concept of EPR is demonstrated in Figure H1, which shows theoretical ground voltage gradients emanating from a pad-mounted HV transformer (as a typical example) under fault conditions. While the EPR condition may only last for a very short time (less than 2 s) until the HV power feed circuit breaker operates, the effects could be fatal and could also cause damage to telecommunications Cabling and equipment installed within, or Connected to Cabling or equipment installed within, the EPR Hazard Zone.

An EPR Hazard Zone may exist within Buildings, e.g. where the Building is supplied with HV Power, as well as on land surrounding external HV power plant such as a pole, tower or transformer.

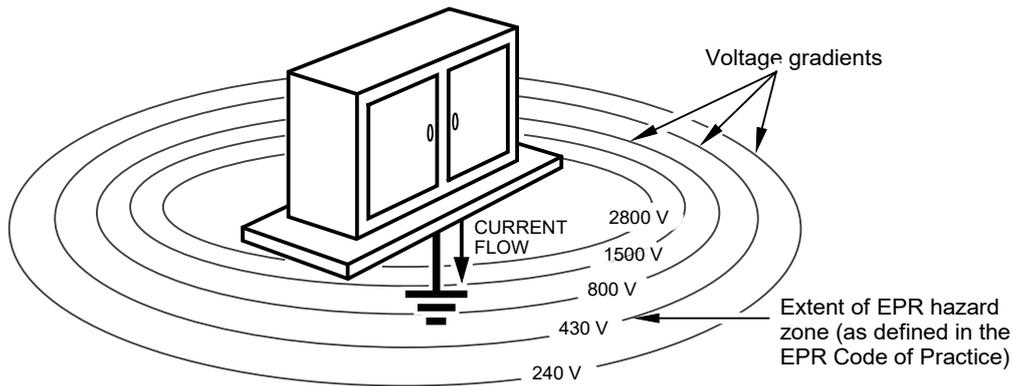


Figure H1

EPR caused by fault current at an HV transformer

H.2.2 Identifying situations of possible EPR hazard

A possible EPR problem may be identified by the presence of HV power poles, towers, transformers, or other system infrastructure and, hence, the likely presence of HV earths that may carry fault current.

Likely EPR hazards are associated with the types of HV Site described in Tables H1 and H2, which indicate the possible extent of the EPR Hazard Zone around the HV Site in typical soil conditions. The hazard zone may extend further in areas of high soil resistivity (e.g. rocky or dry, sandy terrain).

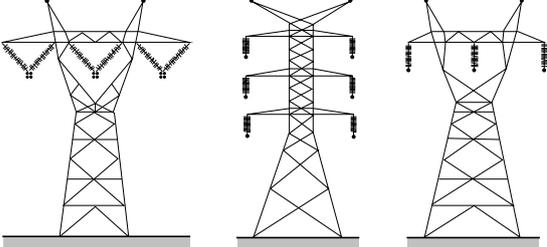
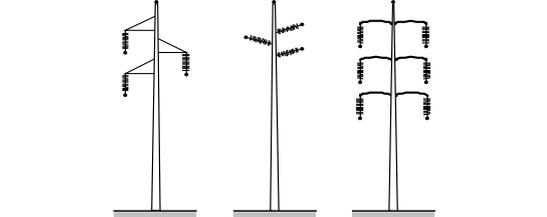
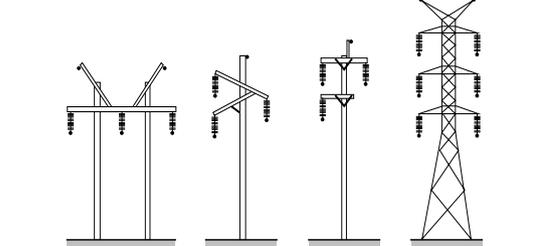
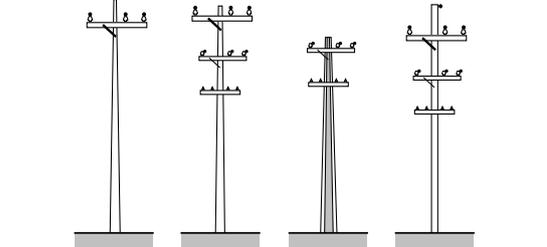
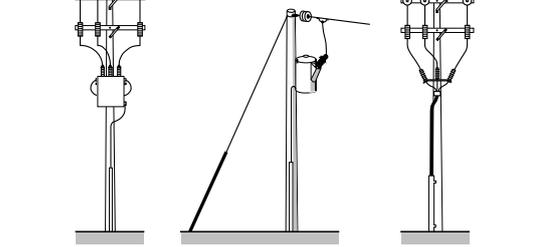
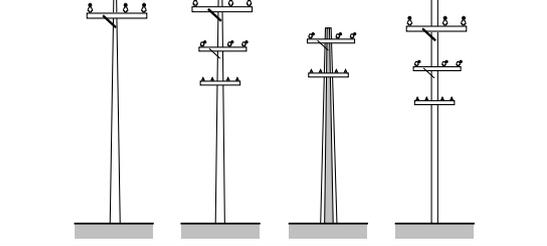
H.2.3 EPR hazard assessment

The level of the EPR at an HV Site and the extent of the associated hazard zone are best determined by theoretical calculation and/or site tests. The methods of calculation and test, however, are outside the scope of this Appendix.

Nevertheless, in most cases such calculations and/or tests may not be required where the minimum distance specified in Tables H1 and H2 can be maintained between the HV Site and the telecommunications Cabling. Note however that power generating stations, transmission or zone substations, SWER (single wire earth return) systems and HV Sites in areas of high soil resistivity (e.g. rocky or dry, sandy terrain) require special consideration. In such cases, advice should be sought from the power utility in accordance with Clause 6.1.2.

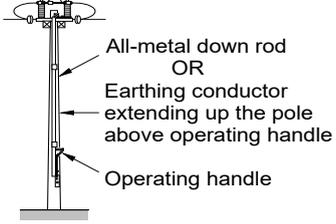
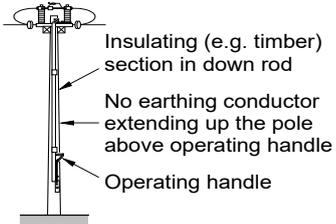
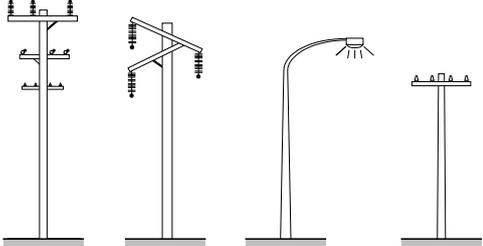
Table H1

Typical EPR hazard zones associated with HV power poles and towers

Type of HV pole or tower	Typically looks like this	Hazard zone
Steel lattice tower (220 kV and higher)		<p>40 m (Note 1)</p>
Metal or concrete pole (220 kV and higher)		<p>40 m (Note 1)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Steel lattice tower; or • wooden pole with down conductor to earth electrode (66 kV and 132 kV)		<p>16 m (Note 1)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Metal or concrete pole; or • wooden pole with down conductor to earth electrode (66 kV and 132 kV)		<p>16 m (Note 1)</p>
Pole with three-phase or SWER transformer, or with connections to underground power Cable (lower than 66 kV)		<p>15 m (Note 1)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Metal or concrete pole; or • wooden pole with down conductor to earth electrode (lower than 66 kV)		<p>15 m (Note 1)</p>

cont:

Table H1
(continued)

Type of HV pole or tower	Typically looks like this	Hazard zone
Wooden pole with pole-top switch and one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • an all-metal down rod; or • an earthing conductor extending up the pole above the handle 	 <p style="text-align: center;"> All-metal down rod OR Earthing conductor extending up the pole above operating handle Operating handle </p>	15 m (Note 1)
Wooden pole with pole-top switch and both of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • an insulating (e.g. timber) section in the down rod; and • no earthing conductor extending up the pole above the handle 	 <p style="text-align: center;"> Insulating (e.g. timber) section in down rod No earthing conductor extending up the pole above operating handle Operating handle </p>	2 m (Note 1)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HV wooden pole without down conductor to earth electrode; or • any pole that only supports LV Power lines 		1 m (Note 2)

Note 1: This distance may be reduced if—

- (a) the power utility has determined that the extent of the EPR Hazard Zone at a particular site is a lesser distance; or
- (b) the installation is part of a Registered Electrical Engineer's design or Registered ITEE Engineer's design in accordance with Clause 6.1.3.

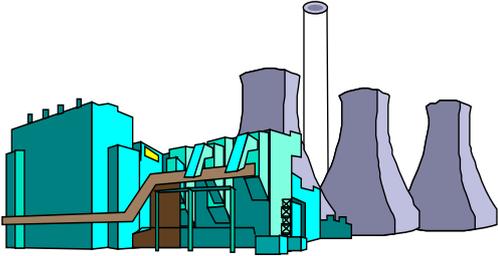
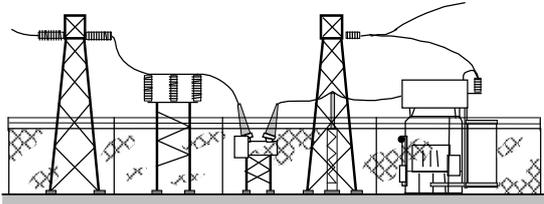
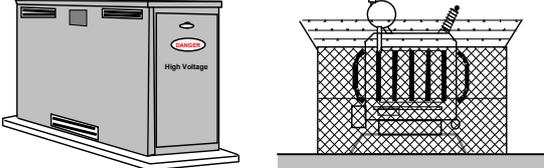
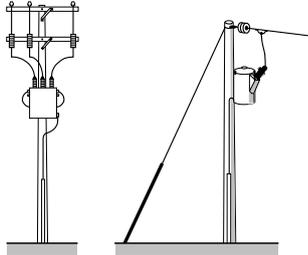
Note 2: In this case, there is no HV earth and therefore no EPR hazard. However, 3 m is the recommended minimum operational clearance to enable pole replacement with minimal disturbance of the telecommunications pits and Cabling. The local power authority may permit a reduced clearance.

Note 3: The information provided in this Appendix is indicative only. For further detailed information, consult AS/NZS 3835.2.

Note 4: Earth fault clearances for voltages 200 kV or higher are based upon 1000 V voltage contours and clearance times of ≤ 0.5 seconds.

Table H2

Typical EPR hazard zones associated with power generating stations, transmission substations, zone substations, padmounts and transformers

Type of HV plant	Typically looks like this	Hazard zone
Power generating station		Indefinite (Note 1)
Power substation		Indefinite (Note 1)
Pad-mount or ground transformer		15 m (Note 2)
Pole-mounted three-phase or SWER transformer (wooden, concrete or metal pole)		15 m (Note 2)

Note 1: The EPR Hazard Zone may extend for hundreds of metres in some cases. Therefore, the extent of the hazard at the particular site should be obtained from the power utility in accordance with Clause 6.1.2, and the installation may need to be designed by a certified electrical engineer in accordance with Clause 6.1.3. In such cases, the relevant Carrier is to be notified of the proposed installation in accordance with Clause 6.1.4.

Note 2: This distance may be reduced if—

- (a) the power utility has determined that the extent of the EPR Hazard Zone at a particular site is a lesser distance; or
- (b) the installation is part of an engineered design in accordance with Clause 6.1.3.

H.2.4 EPR mitigation

H.2.4.1 General rules

Mitigation for EPR problems should be determined at the planning stage. Simple rules, such as installing Cabling and equipment outside the minimum distance specified in Tables H1 and H2, are generally sufficient to overcome most EPR problems.

The following equipment should not be installed inside an EPR zone:

- (a) Customer Equipment.
- (b) Surge suppression devices.
- (c) Earth electrodes.
- (d) Any earthing terminals, link bars or the like.
- (e) Metallic Conduits, trays, Ducts, etc.
- (f) Cabling Provider or Customer access points that will be used, now or in the future, to connect or house any Cable that contains Electrically Conductive Elements, for example—
 - (i) Cable connection devices (Distributors, terminal boxes, Telecommunications Outlets, joints, pillars, cabinets, etc.); or
 - (ii) pits or access holes.

Where installation of the above equipment in an EPR Hazard Zone is unavoidable, the installation may only proceed on the basis of an engineered design in accordance with Clause 6.1.3.

H.2.4.2 Cable passing through an EPR hazard zone

Only plastic-sheathed Cables, in contiguous rigid plastic Conduit, may pass through an EPR Hazard Zone. The installation of pits, access holes and draw boxes for hauling in (not jointing) Cables is also permitted in an EPR Hazard Zone. These should be labelled with a suitable EPR hazard warning. In such cases, Cabling Providers should insulate themselves from local earth in accordance with Clause H.5.

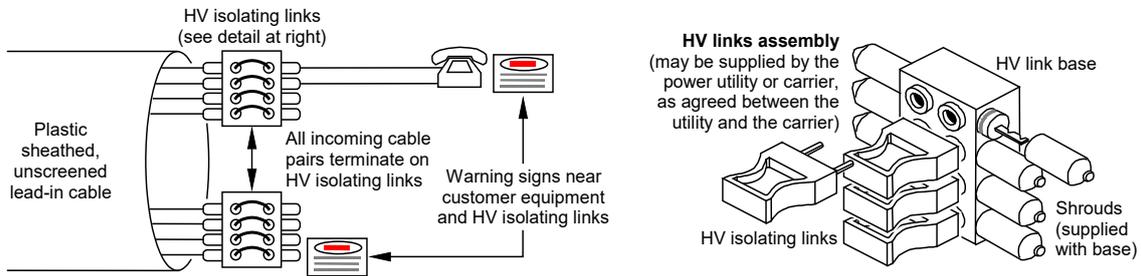
H.2.4.3 Special requirements for services within HV sites

Provision of telecommunication services within HV Sites (e.g. inside power generating stations or HV substations) may require the installation of special isolating links, HV isolation units and the application of special installation practices.

For HV Sites, optical fibre Cabling containing no Electrically Conductive Elements is preferred. The use of such Cabling will isolate personnel and equipment within the HV Site from any remote earth.

Wireless or satellite technologies are also an option when optical fibre Cabling is neither physically nor commercially viable.

Typical arrangements are illustrated in Figure H2. For more information, refer to the EPR code mentioned in Clause 6.1.3.



Note 1: The diagram above shows a simple installation without an MDF. Where an MDF is installed, the HV isolating links are installed between the Building Entry Point and the MDF. The HV isolating links should be removed prior to performing any Cabling Work or repairs to Customer Equipment.

Note 2: The Carrier and power utility may agree to make the HV isolating links the Network Boundary or may agree about who supplies what within the HV Site.

Figure H2

HV isolating links within a power generating station or HV substation

H.3 Low frequency induction (LFI)

H.3.1 What is LFI?

LFI may occur where any telecommunications Cable with Electrically Conductive Elements runs parallel with an HV Power line for some distance.

If there is a phase-to-earth fault on the HV Power line, the phase current in the faulted power line produces a magnetic field that causes a low frequency current to be induced into the telecommunications Cable. Power line faults can result from insulation flashover, mechanical failure, storms, lightning and contact with other objects.

The fault condition only lasts for a short time (less than 2 s) but may be hazardous to telecommunications workers and Customers and may also damage Cabling and equipment. LFI voltages need to be kept within certain limits to minimise the risk of injury or damage. LFI is different from electrically induced noise in telecommunications Cables, which is not hazardous but degrades system performance.

LFI does not occur under normal operating conditions because a balanced three-phase HV Power line will not induce hazardous energy into nearby telecommunications Cables. The magnetic fields produced by balanced phase conductors tend to cancel each other out and the resultant LFI will be negligible.

H.3.2 LFI hazard assessment

H.3.2.1 General

LFI may occur whether the telecommunications Cables or HV Power lines are aerial or underground. Furthermore, the power line need not be within sight of the telecommunications Cable to cause LFI. For example, in a rural situation a telecommunications Cable may run for several kilometres down a valley and still be affected by LFI from a power line running down an adjacent valley up to a kilometre away.

For Customer Cabling, LFI is normally only a concern—

- (a) in urban areas where there are nearby overhead HV Power distribution lines; and
- (b) in outer urban or rural areas where long Cable runs are likely.

Refer to Clause H.3.2.3 for more details.

H.3.2.2 Factors

Any telecommunications Cable exposed to an HV Power line with a phase-to-earth fault will be subjected to an LFI voltage. How much LFI voltage will be induced into the telecommunications Cable depends upon—

- (a) the phase-to-earth fault current on the power line — the higher the fault current, the higher the LFI;
- (b) the length of the telecommunications Cable exposed to the power line — the greater the length of exposure, the higher the LFI;
- (c) the separation between the power line and the telecommunications Cable — the closer the telecommunications Cable is to the power line, the higher the LFI;
- (d) earth resistivity under the power line — the higher the earth resistivity, the higher the LFI; and
- (e) the presence or absence of shielding conductors or environmental shielding (such as metallic water pipes) near the power line or the telecommunications Cable — the presence of shielding reduces the LFI.

LFI voltages accumulate over the total distance of a power line run. For example, if the power line and telecommunications Cable diverge for some distance and then reconverge and run parallel again, the voltages induced in each parallel section will add together. Similarly, any LFI voltages induced into Customer Cabling will add to any LFI voltages induced into electrically conductive telecommunications Cabling within the Carrier's network.

H.3.2.3 When does LFI need to be considered?

Cables without Electrically Conductive Elements (e.g. optical fibre Cables without metallic or carbon fibre strength members or Bearers) are immune from LFI.

A possible LFI problem may be identified by the presence of HV Power lines installed on a route that essentially parallels electrically conductive telecommunications Cables. A possible hazard generally exists when the total exposure length (e.g. within the Carrier's network **and** within the Customer's Premises) typically exceeds a few hundred metres.

While the Carrier may have taken steps to keep the LFI within network Cables to safe limits, improperly installed Customer Cabling will have an additive effect and may raise the LFI above safe limits.

In practical terms, for Customer Cabling it is not necessary to consider LFI under the following conditions:

- (a) Where the total length of any electrically conductive Customer Cabling between the Network Boundary and the end of the Cabling does not exceed 200 m.
- (b) Where the separation distance between Customer Cables and any HV Power line exceeds 1 km.
- (c) Where the total length of exposure between electrically conductive telecommunications Cables (network Cabling + Customer Cabling) and any HV Power line does not exceed 1 km.

H.3.3 LFI mitigation

Where the voltages induced into the telecommunications Cable may exceed permissible limits, the following steps may be taken to reduce the LFI to a safe level:

- (a) Cabling route — where possible, select a Cabling route that will not be in parallel with the HV Power line. Even running the Cable obliquely (45 degrees or more) to the power line will reduce the LFI.
- (b) Separation distance — maintain maximum possible separation between telecommunications Cables and parallel HV Power lines.
- (c) Shielding or screening — maximum shielding against LFI will be provided by enclosing the telecommunications Cables in steel or galvanised iron pipe. Other, less effective measures include—
 - (i) enclosing the Cables in non-magnetic metallic Conduits (e.g. aluminium or copper) earthed at regular intervals or buried in the ground;
 - (ii) the use of shielded (screened) Cable or Cable with a metallic moisture barrier (MB), ensuring that the Cable screen or MB is electrically continuous for the full length of

the Cable run and Connected to a low resistance earth at each end or at regular intervals; or

(iii) installation of a shielding conductor parallel to and in immediate proximity to the telecommunications Cable — such installations require a high conductivity, bare copper conductor buried directly in the ground or insulated conductor Connected to a low resistance earth at each end or at regular intervals.

(d) Gas-filled protectors — installation of earthed, three-electrode gas protectors on all Cable pairs at selected locations along the Cable route. This arrangement is required to be an engineered design to ensure the protectors are correctly located and that an EPR condition is not developed at the protector earthing points when the protector operates.

H.4 Electrostatic coupling

H.4.1 What is electrostatic coupling?

In some rural locations with long Cable runs, electrostatic coupling may occur between aerial telecommunications Cables and certain types of HV Power lines under normal power line operating conditions.

Underground Cables are generally immune to electrostatic coupling.

A hazard may be created by the build-up of electrostatic charges (voltages) on open-circuit Bearer or (spare) pairs of a multi-pair telecommunications Cable. The effect of these electrostatic charges may only be experienced during installation or repair activities, i.e. if the Cabling Provider comes into contact with an open-circuit pair.

The severity of the hazard varies depending on some factors, such as the following:

- (a) The power line configuration — SWER (single wire earth return), single-phase and two-phase systems are the worst case. Balanced three-phase systems, on the other hand, normally have no electrostatic coupling effect of a hazardous nature.
- (b) Separation — the closer the telecommunications Cable and the longer the exposure length to the HV Power line, the greater the hazard produced.
- (c) Cable screening — a continuous Cable screen on the aerial telecommunications Cable, earthed at both ends, provides a discharge path to ground for the electrostatic charges and virtually eliminates the hazard.

H.4.2 Mitigation of electrostatic coupling

Electrostatic coupling may be avoided or reduced to a safe level by applying one of more of the following practices:

- (a) Installing the Customer Cabling underground.

- (b) For unscreened aerial Cable or aerial Cable where the Cable screen is not earthed, maintaining the minimum separation distance set out in Table H3.
- (c) Using aerial Cable with a continuous screen earthed at both ends of the Cable or at both sides of the section of Cable exposed to the parallel HV Power line.

Table H3

Minimum separation from parallel HV power line to avoid an electrostatic coupling hazard

Minimum separation from HV line	Length of parallel exposure
4 m	100 m
10 m	200 m
20 m	500 m
50 m	2 km

Note: Table H3 only applies to unscreened aerial Cable or screened aerial Cable where the screen is not continuous or is not earthed at both ends. Underground Cable is generally immune to electrostatic coupling.

H.5 Safety practices

Before working on equipment, Cable conductors or other metallic Cable elements (such as Cable screens or Bearers), Cabling Providers should take steps to ensure they are insulated from the local earthed environment by using fit for purpose electrically insulated gloves, mats, tools and safety boots in any of the following situations:

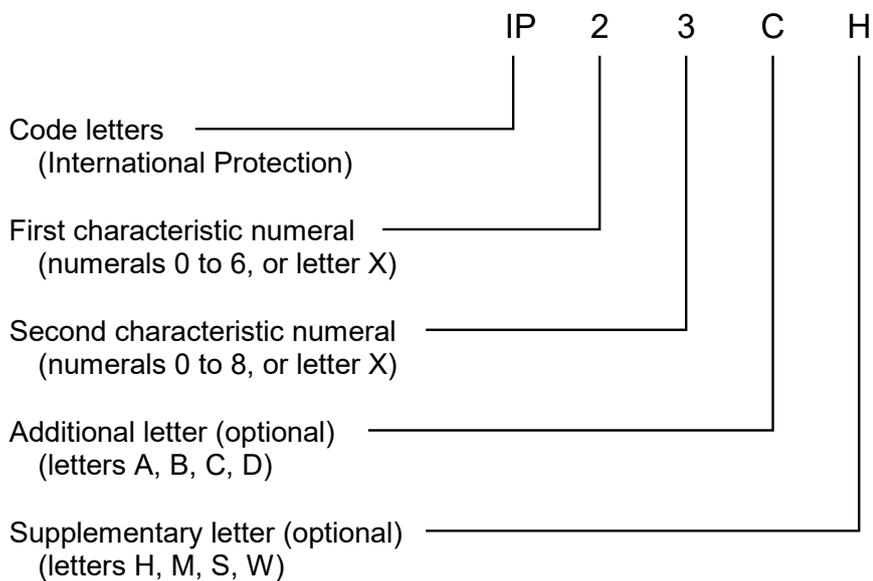
- (a) Telecommunications Cabling is located within, or it is suspected that Cabling is located within, an EPR Hazard Zone.
- (b) It is suspected that telecommunications Cabling may be exposed to LFI of any magnitude.
- (c) It is suspected that aerial telecommunications Cabling may be exposed to the effects of electrostatic coupling.

APPENDIX

I The IP Code (INFORMATIVE)

The IP Code is a system for classifying degrees of protection provided by Enclosures of electrical equipment with regard to protection of persons against access to hazardous parts inside the Enclosure and protection of equipment inside the Enclosure against the ingress of solid foreign objects and harmful effects due to the ingress of water.

The degree of protection provided by an Enclosure is expressed using an alphanumeric code consisting of four, five or six characters, as described in Figure I1 and Table I1.



Note 1: Where a characteristic numeral is not required to be specified, it is replaced by the letter 'X'.

Note 2: Additional letters and/or supplementary letters may be omitted without replacement.

Note 3: See Table I1 for the meaning of each numeral or letter.

Figure I1
Arrangement of the IP Code

Table I1
Summary of the IP Code

	IP	Meaning for the protection of EQUIPMENT	Meaning for the protection of PERSONS
First numeral		<i>Against ingress of solid foreign objects:</i>	<i>Against access to hazardous parts with:</i>
	X	Unimportant	Unimportant
	0	Non-protected	Non-protected
	1	≥ 50 mm diameter	Back of hand
	2	≥ 12.5 mm diameter	Finger
	3	≥ 2.5 mm diameter	Tool
	4	≥ 1.0 mm diameter	Wire
	5	Dust-protected	Wire
	6	Dust-tight	Wire
Second numeral		<i>Against ingress of water with harmful effects:</i>	
	X	Unimportant	
	0	Non-protected	
	1	Vertically dripping	
	2	Dripping (15° tilted)	
	3	Spraying	
	4	Splashing	
	5	Jetting	
	6	Powerful jetting	
	7	Temporary immersion	
	8	Continuous immersion	
Additional letter (optional)			<i>Against access to hazardous parts with:</i>
	A		Back of hand
	B		Finger
	C		Tool
	D		Wire
Supplementary letter (optional)		<i>Supplementary information specific to:</i>	
	H	High voltage apparatus	
	M	Motion during water test	
	S	Stationary during water test	
	W	Weather conditions	

Note 1: As an example, IP54 means protected against dust and splashing. In another example, IPXXB means protected against access to hazardous parts with a finger.

Note 2: Table I1 is derived from AS 60529 and is provided for basic guidance to interpret any given IP Code. Refer to AS 60529 for the full IP Code description.

APPENDIX

J The network boundary (INFORMATIVE)

J.1 Introduction

The Network Boundary is defined in the *Telecommunications Act 1997* (the *Act*).
The Network Boundary—

- (a) is a nominal demarcation point between Carrier-owned and Customer- owned Cabling and equipment;
- (b) determines whether Cabling or equipment is subject to the ACMA technical regulation;
- (c) is a physical boundary and not a service boundary; and
- (d) is not a boundary of competition — in principle, there are no boundaries to competition under the *Act*.

Note: The Network Boundary is not a definitive boundary of Cabling and equipment ownership (section 47 of Schedule 3 of the *Act* applies). Carriers may own Cabling or equipment on the Customer's side of the Network Boundary and non-Carriers may own Facilities on the Carrier's side of the Network Boundary. However, Facilities on the Carrier's side of the Network Boundary are protected from unlawful tampering or interference under section 474.6 of the *Criminal Code 1995* ('*Cwth*').

J.2 Interpretation

As with all legislation, the *Act* is open to interpretation and there may be a number of 'valid interpretations'. This Appendix represents interpretation agreed by the ACMA and industry to provide industry certainty.

J.3 Legislation

The boundary of a Telecommunications Network (referred to in this Standard as the Network Boundary) is determined by section 22 of the *Act*. The relevant passages in the *Act* are as follows:

- '(4) The boundary of a Telecommunications Network is:
 - (a) in a case where a Telecommunications Network is used to supply a Carriage Service to an End-User in a Building by means of a Line that enters the Building — the point agreed between the Customer and the Carrier or Carriage Service Provider who operates the Telecommunications Network, or, failing agreement:
 - (i) if there is a Main Distribution Frame in the Building and the Line is Connected to the frame – the side of the frame nearest to the End-User; or
 - (ii) if subparagraph (i) does not apply but the Line is Connected to a Network Termination Device located in, on or within close proximity to, the Building – the side of the device nearest to the End-User; or

- (iii) if neither subparagraph (i) nor (ii) applies but the Line is Connected to one or more Sockets in the Building— the side nearest to the End-User of the First Socket after the Building Entry Point; or
- (b) in a case where a Telecommunications Network is used to supply a Carriage Service to an End-User by means of a satellite-based Facility that transmits to, or receives transmissions from, the point where the End-User is located — the outer surface of the satellite-based Facility; or
- (c) in a case where:
 - (i) a Telecommunications Network is used to supply a Carriage Service to an End-User; and
 - (ii) paragraphs (a) and (b) do not apply;the outer surface of the fixed Facility nearest to the End-User, where the Facility is used, installed ready for use or intended for use to supply the Carriage Service.
- (5) If, immediately before 1 July 1997, the boundary of a Telecommunications Network used to supply a standard telephone service to an End-User in a Building by means of a Line that enters the Building is the side of a Main Distribution Frame, or a telephone Socket, nearest to the End-User, paragraph (4)(a) has effect, on and after 1 July 1997, as if the Customer and the Carrier or Carriage Service Provider who operates the network had agreed to the boundary at that point.
- (6) Subsection (5) does not prevent the Customer and the Carrier or Carriage Service Provider agreeing to a boundary at a different point.'

Note 1: In accordance with section 7 of the *Act*, 'satellite-based facility' means a radiocommunications transmitter, or a radiocommunications receiver, in a satellite.

Note 2: The Explanatory Memorandum to *the Telecommunications Bill 1996* (the Bill presented to Parliament to make the *Act*) cited 'mobile telecommunications services' as an example where paragraph (c) applies.

Note 3: In this Standard, the requirements for a Main Distribution Frame (MDF) apply to twisted pair Cables only and do not embrace coaxial Cables and optical fibre Cables.

J.4 Analysis

The Network Boundary is determined by means of legal and technical analysis according to the hierarchy set by section 22 of the *Act*. This 'pecking order' effectively comprises a 'true' or 'false' breakdown that may be simply expressed by use of a flow chart such as Figure J1. However, interpretation of certain words and expressions affects interpretation of section 22 of the *Act*.

J.5 Agreements with customers about the network boundary

Where a Carriage Service is supplied to an End-User in a Building by means of a Line that enters the Building, section 22 (4)(a) of the *Act* allows Customer and Carriers or Carriage Service Providers to agree on a network boundary point. To be enforceable, it is necessary for such an agreement to be made with the Customer of the service and not with a third party such as a body corporate, owner, builder or developer who is not actually the Customer.

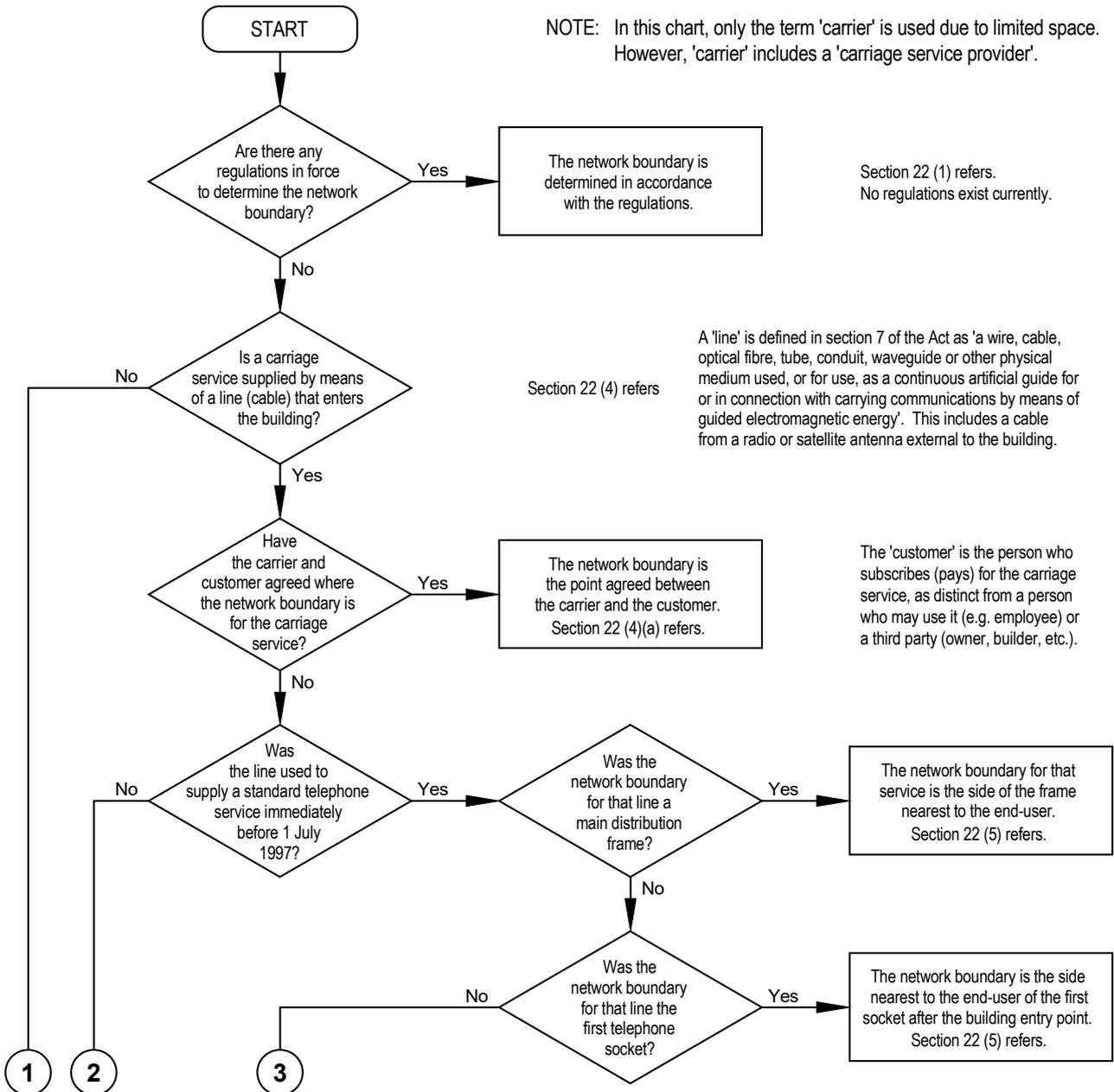
The problem with such agreements is that Cabling Providers and other Carriers or Carriage Service Providers may have no knowledge of them and may assume that the Network Boundary is at the 'default' point, as described in this Standard. Such agreements also lapse when the Customer cancels the service, at which point the Network Boundary returns to the 'default' point.

J.6 Practical examples

Figures J2 to J17 provide practical examples in determining where the Network Boundary is, based on section 22 of the *Act* and the relevant definitions in this Standard.

Table J1 provides a summary of network boundaries using fibre, HFC and wireless terminations.

Figures J18 to J20 provide practical determination of the expression, 'the side nearest to the End-User', used in section 22 of the *Act* in relation to a Main Distribution Frame, a Network Termination Device and the First Socket.



[Continued on the following page]

Figure J1
Analysis of section 22 of the Telecommunications Act 1997

[Continued from the previous page]

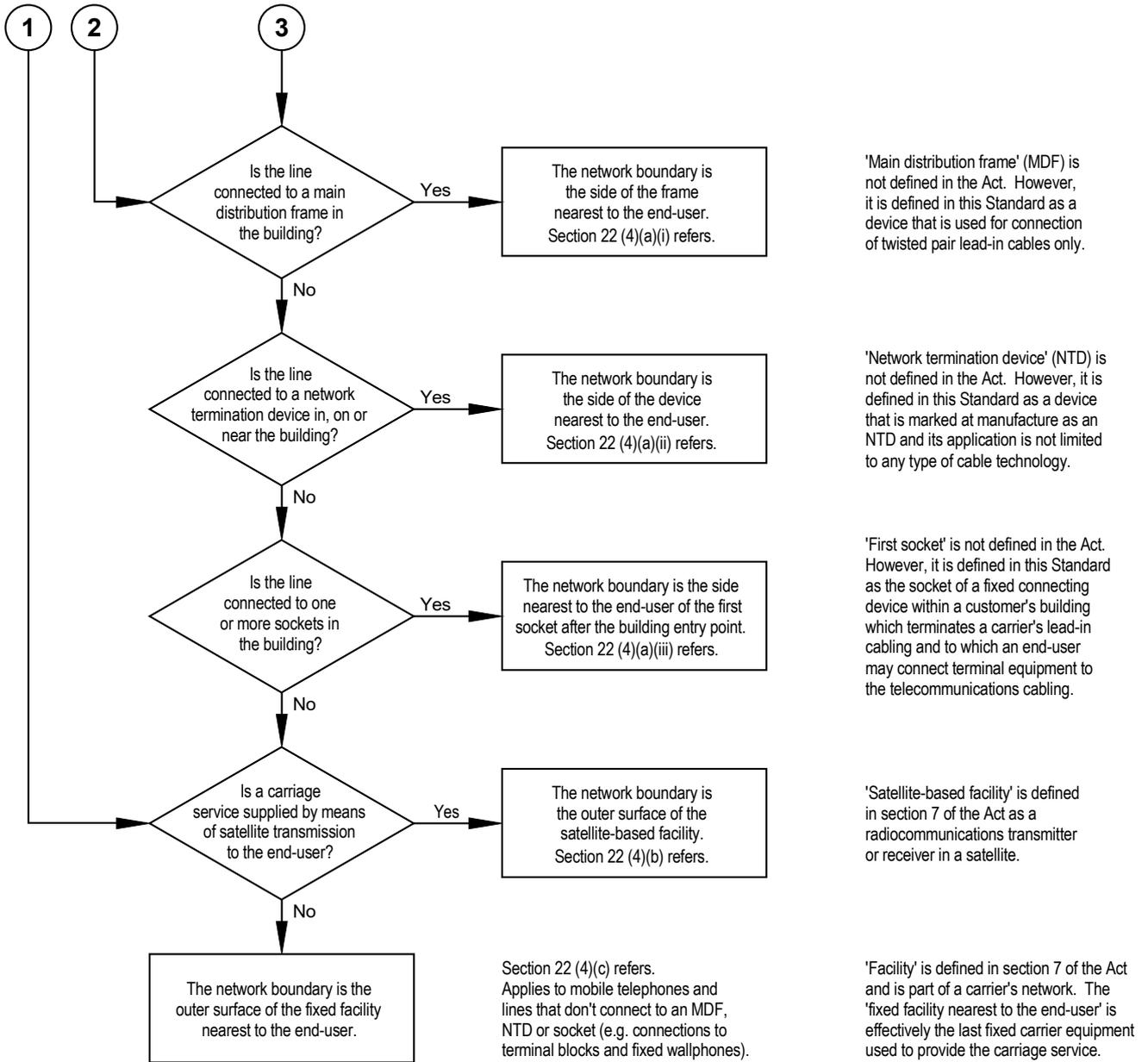


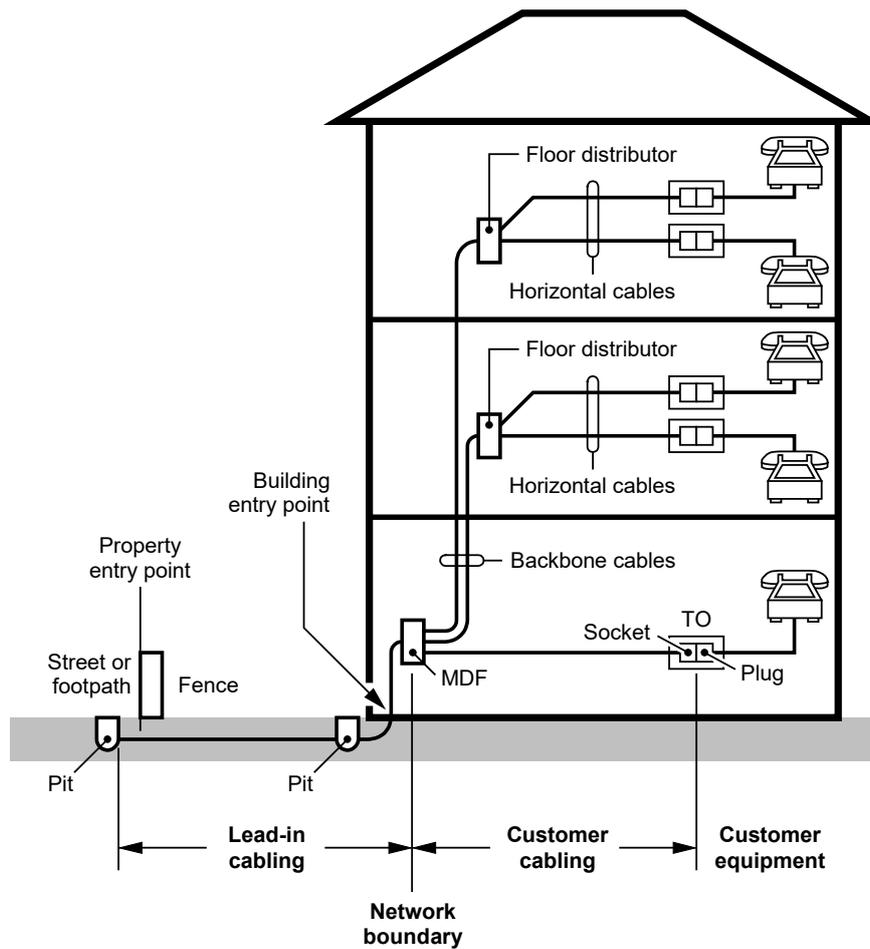
Figure J1

Analysis of section 22 of the Telecommunications Act 1997 (continued)

Table J1

Summary of network boundaries using fibre, HFC and wireless terminations

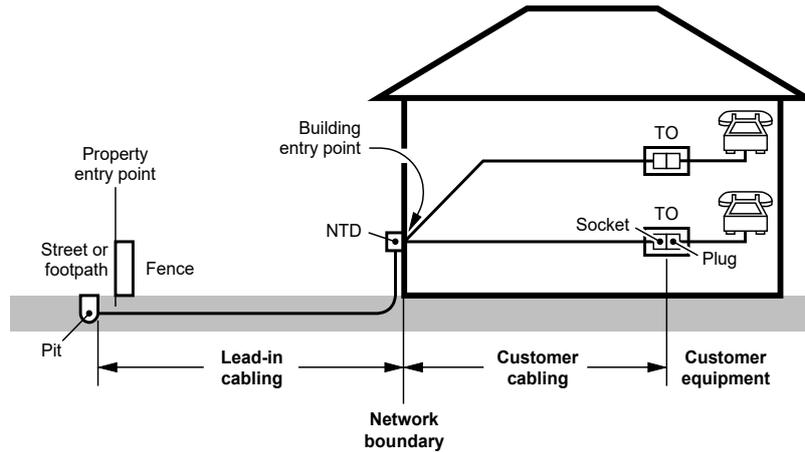
Access Technology	Type of User Network Interface (UNI)	Port Type	Typical Type of Premises	Network Boundary Point
Broadband HFC (non-nbn)	Coaxial socket	NA	All	Coaxial connector
nbn wireless and HFC	UNI-D	Ethernet	All	UNI
nbn FTTP	UNI-V	Analogue phone	All	UNI
	UNI-D	Ethernet		
nbn FTTN/B	UNI-DSL	VDSL2	Single Dwelling Units	Telecommunications Outlet, or a Passive NTD where this exists.
nbn FTTN/B	UNI-DSL	VDSL2	Multi Dwelling Units	CUSTOMER side MDF
nbn FTTC	UNI-D	Ethernet	Single Dwelling Units	Telecommunications Outlet, or a Passive NTD where this exists.
nbn FTTC	UNI-D	Ethernet	Multi Dwelling Units	Customer side MDF
Other fibre network provider, e.g. Telstra Velocity Fibre (non-nbn)	UNI-V	Analogue phone	All	UNI
	UNI-D	Ethernet		



Note: In the above case, the installation satisfies section 22 (4)(a)(i) of the Act (refer to Figure J1). The MDF is the Network Boundary for any Line that is Connected to that MDF and that is used to supply a Carriage Service to an End-User in that Building.

Figure J2

Network boundary for copper twisted pair telecommunications networks where a line connects to an MDF in the end-user's building



Note 1: NTDs were introduced in the *Telecommunications Act 1997*. If, immediately before 1 July 1997, the Network Boundary for a Line used to supply a standard telephone service to an End-User in a Building was the MDF or the First Socket, the Network Boundary for that service remains at that MDF or Socket, as applicable, unless the Customer agrees otherwise.

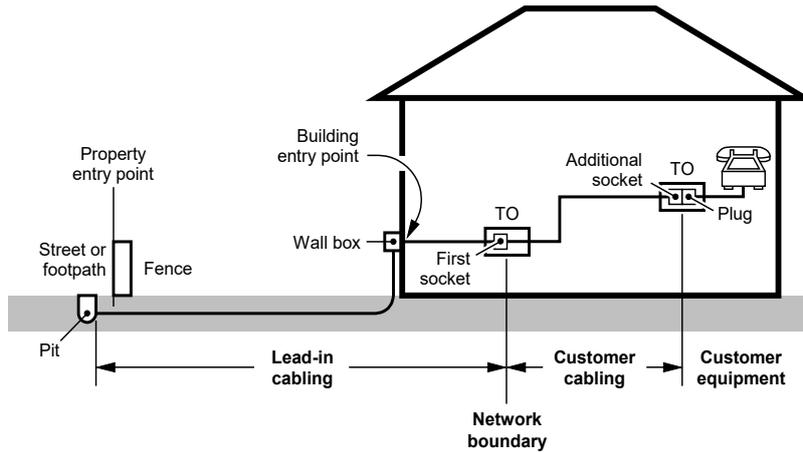
Note 2: In the above case, the installation does not satisfy section 22 (4)(a)(i) of the Act but satisfies section 22 (4)(a)(ii) (refer to Figure J1). Therefore, the NTD is the Network Boundary for any Line that is Connected to that NTD.

Note 3: An NTD is a device provided by the Carrier that is marked at manufacture, 'Network Termination Device' or 'NTD'. A device that is not so marked is not an NTD.

Note 4: The NTD may be located in, on or within close proximity to, the End-User's Building.

Figure J3

Network boundary where a line connects to a network termination device (NTD)

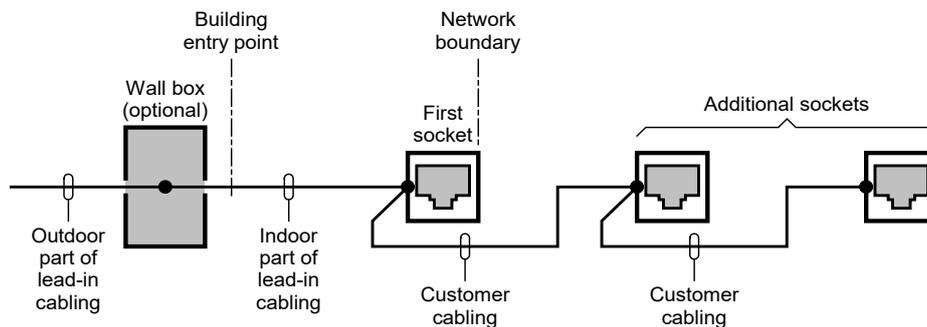


Note 1: In the above case, the installation does not satisfy section 22 (4)(a)(i) or section 22 (4)(a)(ii) of the Act but satisfies section 22 (4)(a)(iii) (refer to Figure J1). Therefore, the First Socket is the Network Boundary for any Line that is Connected to that Socket.

Note 2: The wall box is not an NTD unless it is marked as such at manufacture.

Figure J4

Network boundary where a line connects to the first socket after the building entry point



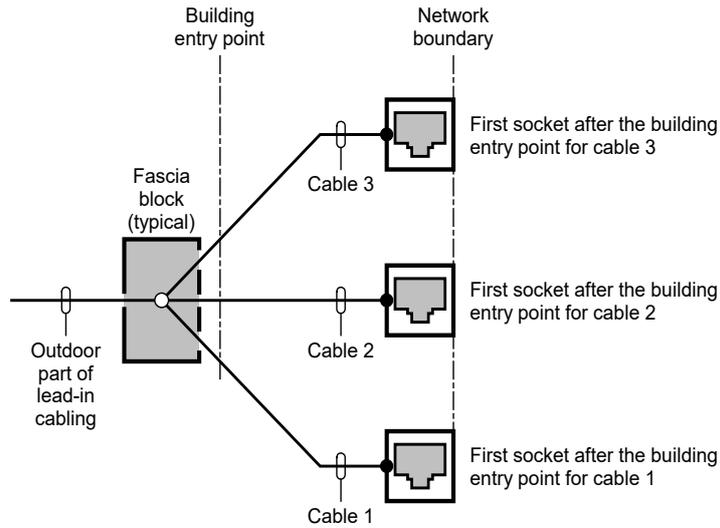
Note 1: In the above case, the installation does not satisfy section 22 (4)(a)(i) or section 22 (4)(a)(ii) of the Act but satisfies section 22 (4)(a)(iii) (refer to Figure J1). Therefore, the First Socket Connected to a Cable or pair is the Network Boundary for that Cable/pair.

Note 2: Any Socket or Plug/Socket connector inside the wall box is not the Network Boundary for two reasons:

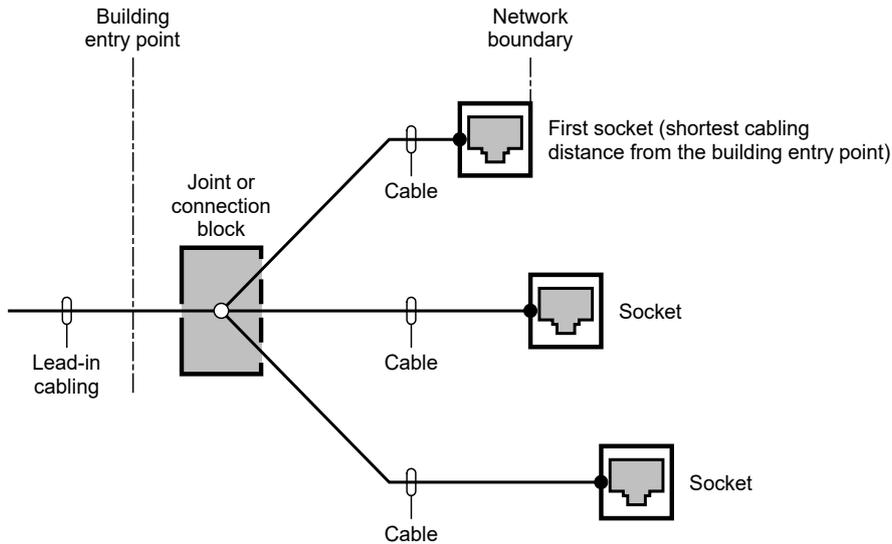
- (a) in principle, an external Socket is not 'after the Building Entry Point' as required by section 22 (4)(a)(iii) of the Act; and
- (b) in accordance with the First Socket definition in this Standard, the Socket or connector in the wall box is not part of a Telecommunications Outlet (TO), and therefore is not the Network Boundary, unless it is provided for the express purpose of allowing an End-User to connect Terminal Equipment.

Figure J5

Network boundary where the line connects to two or more sockets in a 'bus' configuration



(a) Star-wired before the building entry point



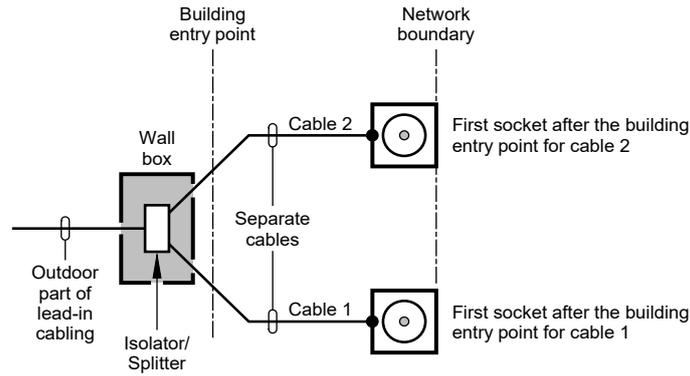
(b) Star-wired after the building entry point

Note 1: In case (a), the installation does not satisfy section 22 (4)(a)(i) or section 22 (4)(a)(ii) of the Act but satisfies section 22 (4)(a)(iii) (refer to Figure J1). Each Socket is the First Socket for the Cable Connected to that Socket and is the Network Boundary for that Cable.

Note 2: In case (b), what Socket is the 'First Socket after the Building Entry Point' is determined by Cable length in accordance with the principle conveyed in Figure J5. In other words, the First Socket is the Socket that is the shortest Cabling distance from the Building Entry Point.

Figure J6

Network boundary for a legacy telephone installation (pre-1989) where the line connects to two or more sockets in a 'star' configuration



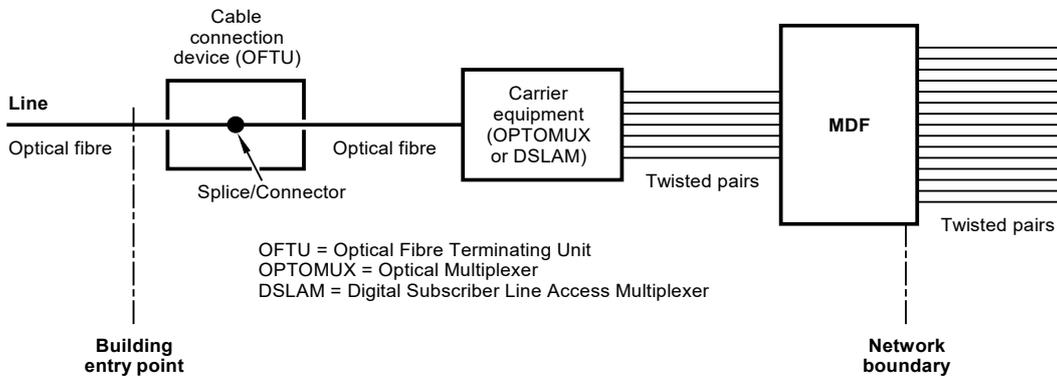
Note 1: The installation does not satisfy section 22 (4) (a) (i) or section 22 (4) (a) (ii) of the Act but satisfies section 22 (4) (a) (iii) (refer to Figure J1). Each Socket is the First Socket for the Cable Connected to that Socket and is the Network Boundary for that Cable.

Note 2: Any Socket or Plug/Socket connector inside the wall box is not the Network Boundary for two reasons:

- (a) in principle, an external Socket is not 'after the Building Entry Point' as required by section 22 (4) (a) (iii) of the Act; and
- (b) in accordance with the First Socket definition in this Standard, the Socket or connector in the wall box is not part of a Telecommunications Outlet (TO), and therefore not the Network Boundary, unless it is provided for the express purpose of allowing an End-User to connect Terminal Equipment.

Figure J7

Network boundary for a standard coaxial cable broadband internet installation



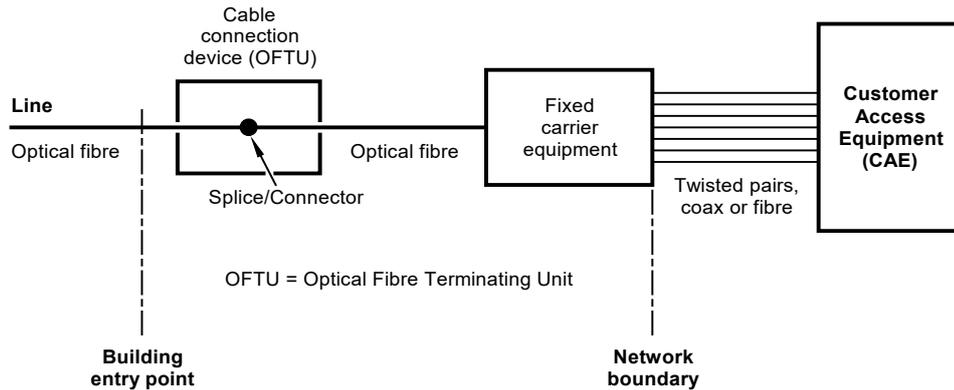
Note 1: There may be more than one optical fibre Cable connection device within the Premises.

Note 2: In the above case, the Carrier equipment is usually rack-mounted and hard-wired, either directly or indirectly, to the MDF.

Note 3: An optical fibre connection device is not an MDF, even if it contains Cross-Connections, because an MDF only provides for electrical (as distinct from optical) termination of Lead-In Cabling.

Figure J8

Network boundary for optical fibre telecommunications network connecting to an MDF



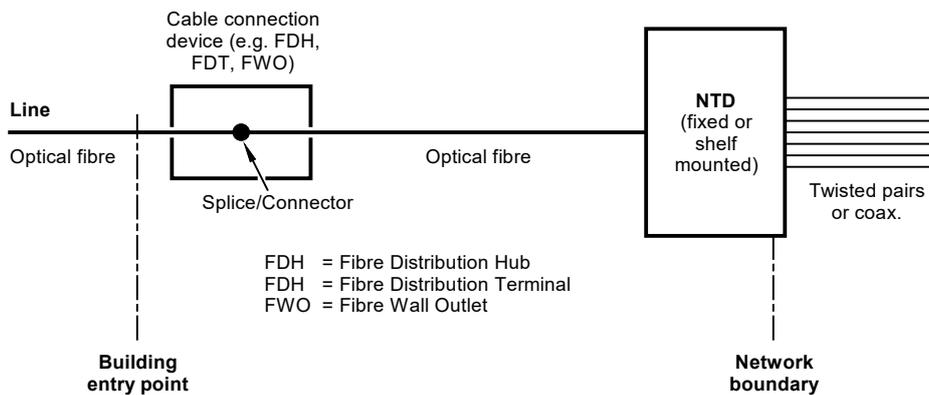
Note 1: There may be more than one optical fibre Cable connection device within the Premises.

Note 2: In the above case, the Carrier equipment usually provides for direct connection of the CAE via Plug/Socket and the installation does not satisfy section 22 (4)(a) or section 22 (4)(b) of the Act, so section 22 (4)(c) applies (refer to Figure J1). The Network Boundary is the outer surface of the fixed Facility nearest to the End-User. In practical terms, this will be the connectors on the 'Customer side' of the Carrier equipment.

Note 3: An optical fibre connection device is not an MDF, even if it contains Cross-Connections, because an MDF only provides for electrical (as distinct from optical) termination of Lead-In Cabling.

Figure J9

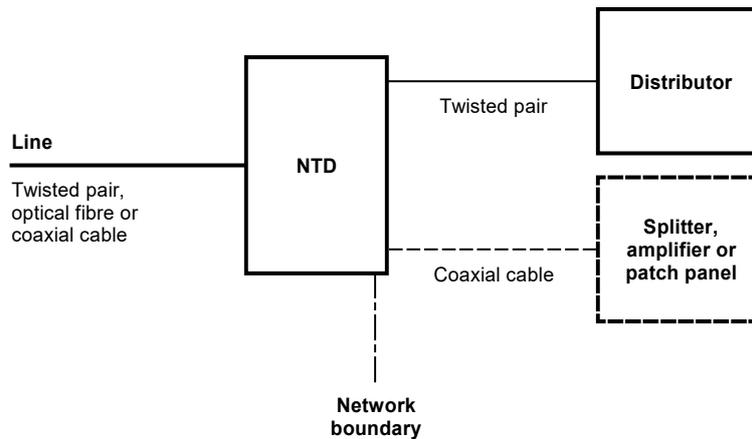
Network boundary for optical fibre telecommunications network connecting directly to CAE



Note: An optical fibre connection device is not an MDF, even if it contains Cross-Connections, because an MDF only provides for electrical (as distinct from optical) termination of Lead-In Cabling.

Figure J10

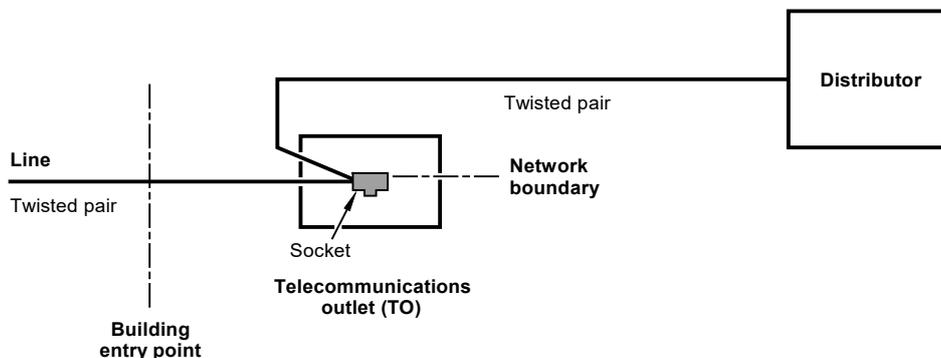
Network boundary for optical fibre telecommunications networks connecting to an NTD (FTTP model)



Note: In the above case, the location of the Network Boundary hinges on the definition of Main Distribution Frame (MDF) in this Standard. In accordance with the MDF definition, the Distributor is not an MDF because it does not terminate a Carrier's Lead-In Cabling (the Lead-In Cabling is terminated on the NTD). Therefore, the installation does not satisfy section 22 (4)(a)(i) of the Act but satisfies section 22 (4)(a)(ii) and the Network Boundary is at the NTD (refer to Figure J1).

Figure J11

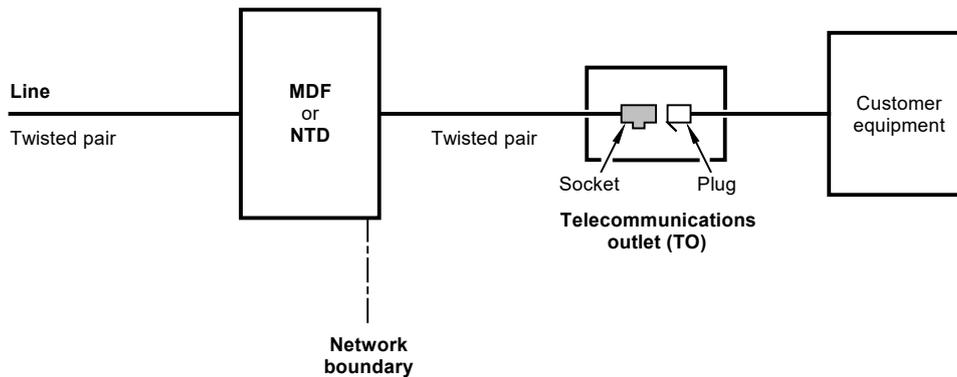
**Network boundary where an NTD precedes a distributor
(e.g. FTTP or home networking)**



Note: In the above case, the location of the Network Boundary hinges on the definition of Main Distribution Frame (MDF) in this Standard. In accordance with the MDF definition, the Distributor is not an MDF because it does not terminate a Carrier's Lead-In Cabling (the Lead-In Cabling is terminated on the TO). Therefore, the installation does not satisfy section 22 (4)(a)(i) of the Act but satisfies section 22 (4)(a)(iii) and the Network Boundary is at the First Socket (refer to Figure J1).

Figure J12

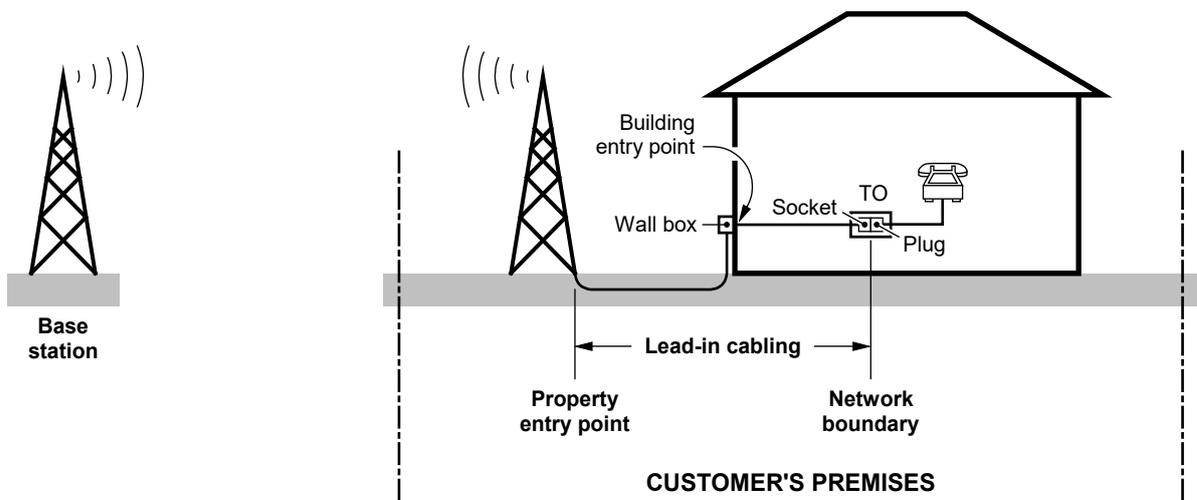
**Network boundary where a TO precedes a distributor
(e.g. home networking)**



Note: In the above case, the installation satisfies section 22 (4)(a)(i) or section 22 (4)(a)(ii) of the Act, as applicable, so section 22 (4)(a)(iii) of the Act does not apply (refer to Figure J1). The Network Boundary is at the MDF or NTD, as applicable.

Figure J13

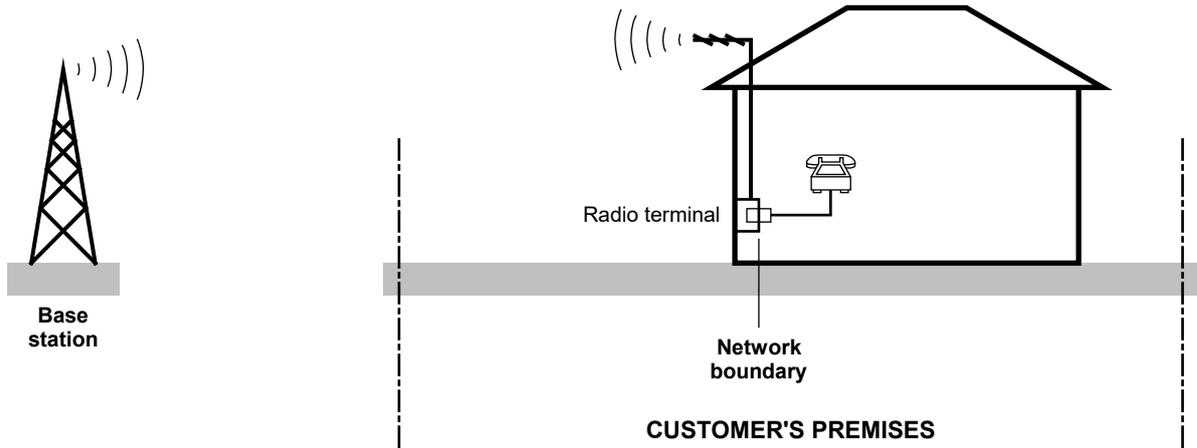
Network boundary where an MDF or NTD precedes a TO socket



Note: In the above case, while radio is used to supply the service to the Customer's Premises, the final method of supply is by means of a Line (Cable) that enters the Building. Therefore, section 22 (4)(a) of the Act applies and the Network Boundary will be at the MDF, NTD or First Socket, as applicable (refer to Figure J1).

Figure J14

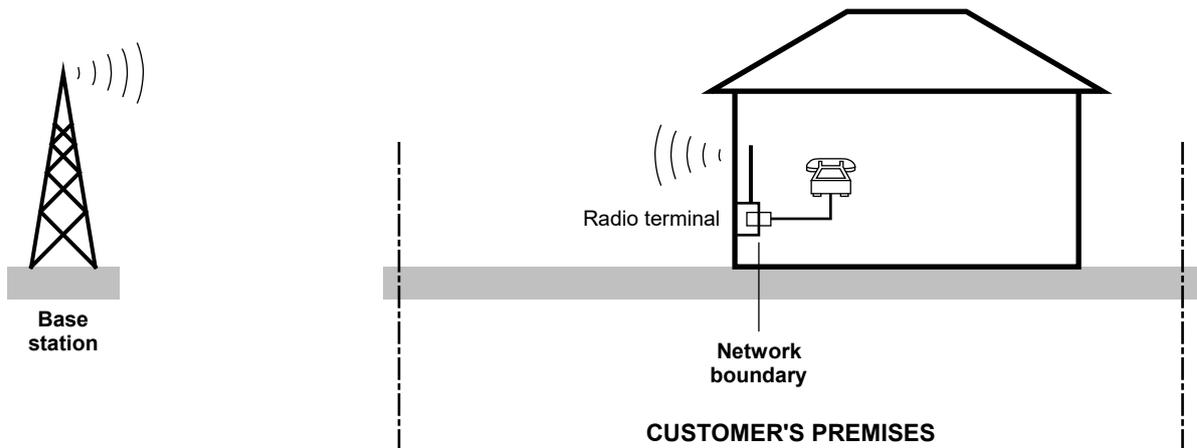
Network boundary for service supplied to premises by terrestrial radio (e.g. rural/remote premises)



Note: In the above case, while radiocommunication is used to supply the service to the Customer's Premises, the final method of delivery is by means of a Line (antenna Cable) that enters the Building. Therefore, section 22 (4)(a) of the Act applies and the Network Boundary will be at the MDF, NTD or First Socket, as applicable, or otherwise section 22 (4)(c) of the Act applies and the Network Boundary is the outer surface of the fixed Facility nearest to the End-User ((i.e. the radio terminal). If the radio terminal is not marked as an NTD, it will usually incorporate a Socket into which Terminal Equipment may be plugged. In practical terms, the Network Boundary is this Socket on the radio terminal.

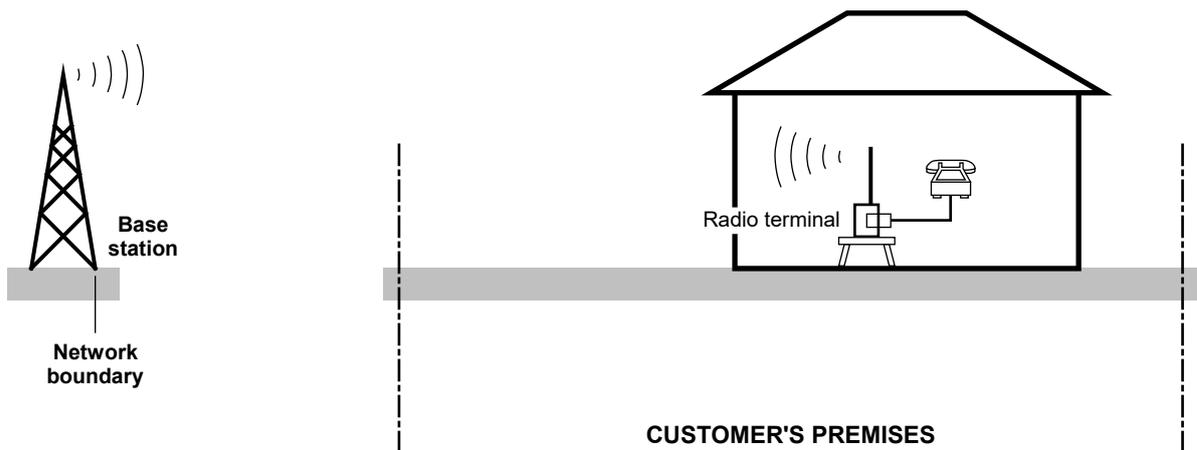
Figure J15

Network boundary for service supplied directly to an external antenna on a building by terrestrial radio



Note: In the above case, radiocommunication is used to supply the service directly to a radio terminal inside the Building. In this scenario, section 22 (4)(c) of the Act applies and the Network Boundary is the outer surface of the fixed Facility nearest to the End-User (refer to Figure J1). This means the Network Boundary is at the access Port on the fixed radio terminal.

(a) Fixed radio terminal within the building

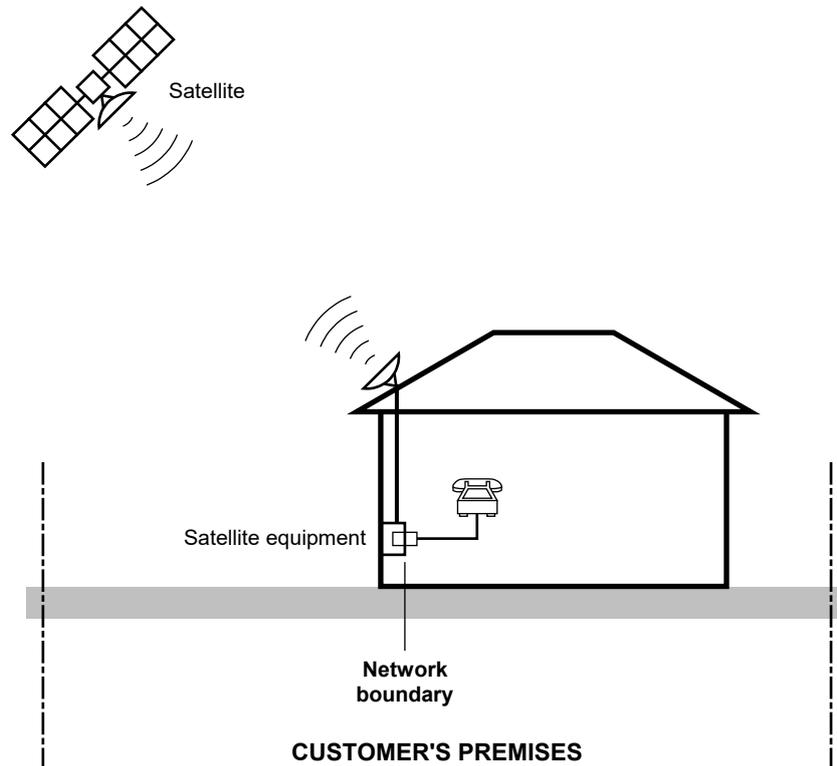


Note: In the above case, radiocommunication is used to supply the service directly to a radio terminal inside the Building. In this scenario, section 22 (4)(c) of the Act applies and the Network Boundary is the outer surface of the fixed Facility nearest to the End-User (refer to Figure J1). As the radio terminal in the Customer's Premises is not fixed, this means the Network Boundary is at the nearest radio base station (this being the nearest 'fixed Facility' to the End-User).

(b) Portable radio terminal within the building

Figure J16

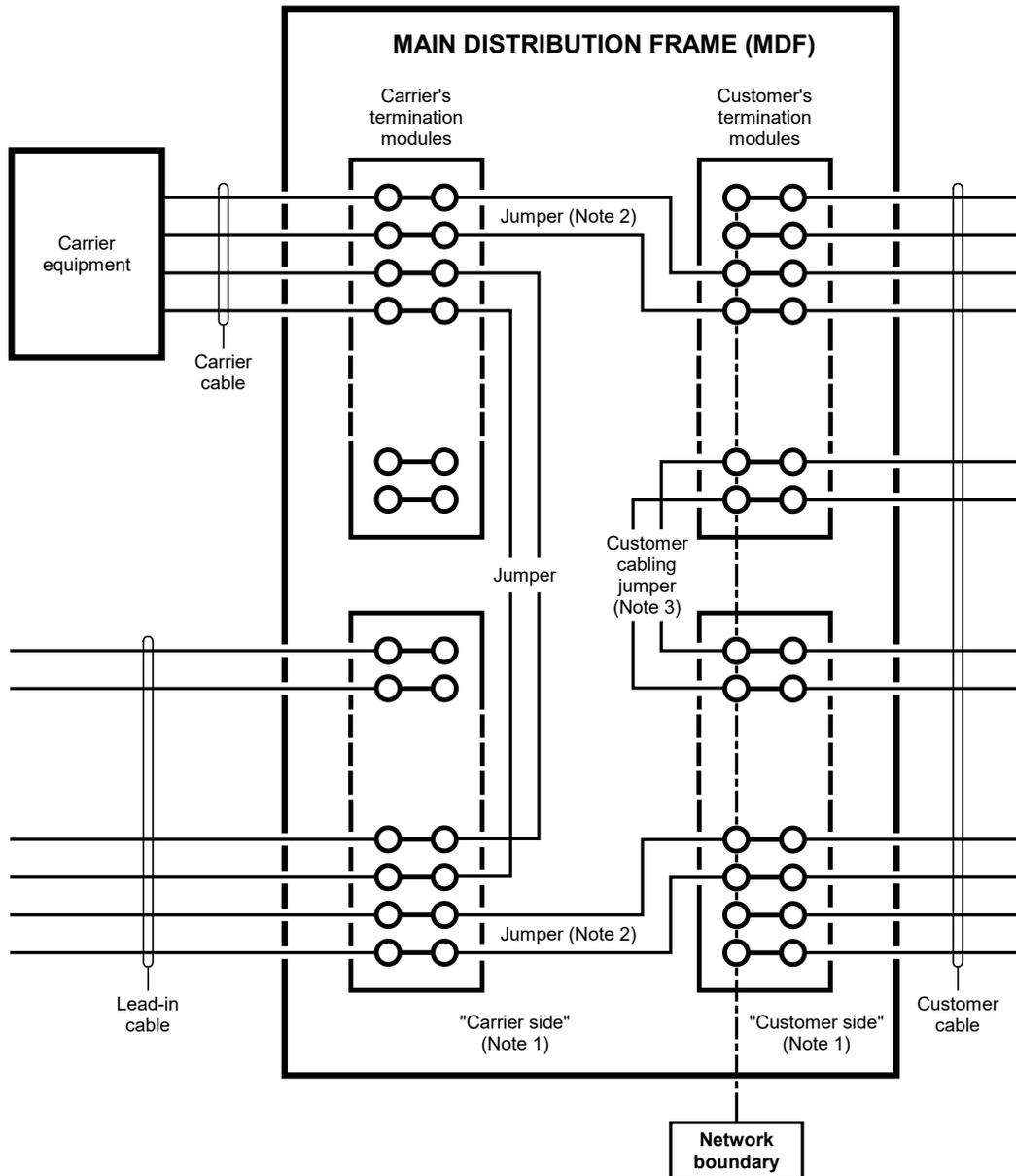
Network boundary for service supplied directly to a building by terrestrial radio



Note: In the above case, while the satellite is used to supply the service to the Customer's Premises, the final method of delivery is by means of a Line (antenna Cable) that enters the Building. Therefore, section 22 (4)(a) of the Act applies and the Network Boundary will be at the MDF, NTD or First Socket, as applicable, or otherwise section 22 (4)(c) of the Act applies and the Network Boundary is the outer surface of the fixed Facility nearest to the End-User ((i.e. the satellite equipment). If the satellite equipment is not marked as an NTD, it will usually incorporate a Socket into which Terminal Equipment may be plugged. In practical terms, the Network Boundary is this Socket on the satellite equipment. However, if the satellite antenna is inside the Building or built into the Customer Equipment (e.g. a portable sat-phone), section 22 (4)(b) of the Act applies and the Network Boundary is at the satellite. Refer to Figure J1.

Figure J17

Network boundary for service supplied to premises by satellite



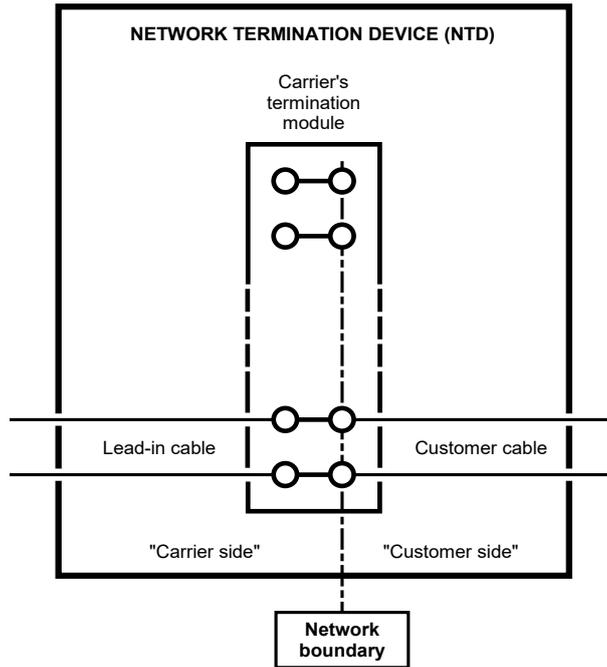
Note 1: The 'side of frame nearest to the End-User' is the 'Customer side' of the MDF, i.e. the termination modules and other hardware provided by the Customer's Cabling Provider. Lead-in termination modules and other hardware provided by the Carrier are on the 'Carrier side' of the MDF.

Note 2: A Cabling Provider is authorised by Carriers to connect a Jumper to the Carrier's termination module under certain conditions (refer to Clause 13.13).

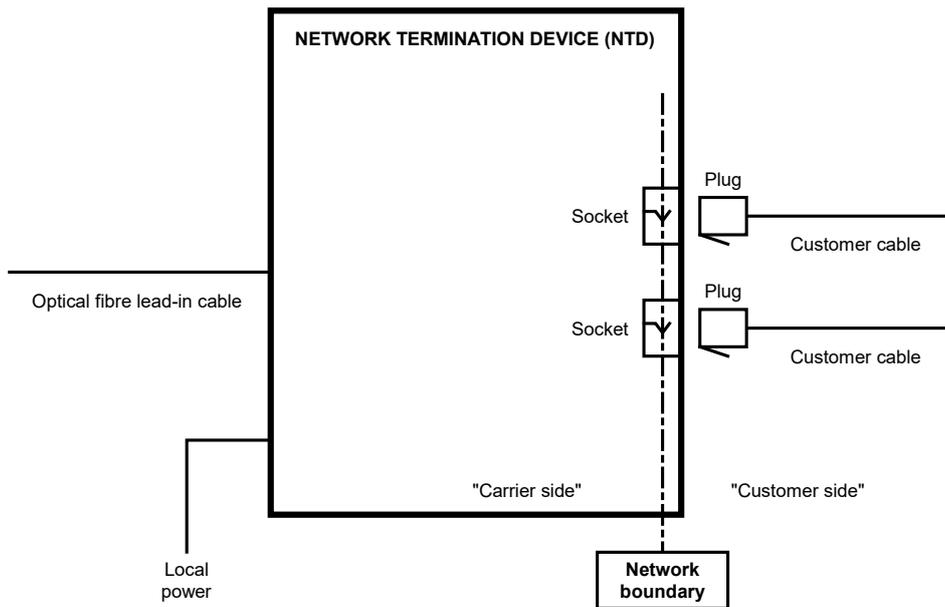
Note 3: A Jumper that interconnects Customer Cables on the Customer's termination modules is Customer Cabling.

Figure J18

Precise location of the network boundary at an MDF



(a) Twisted pair cables



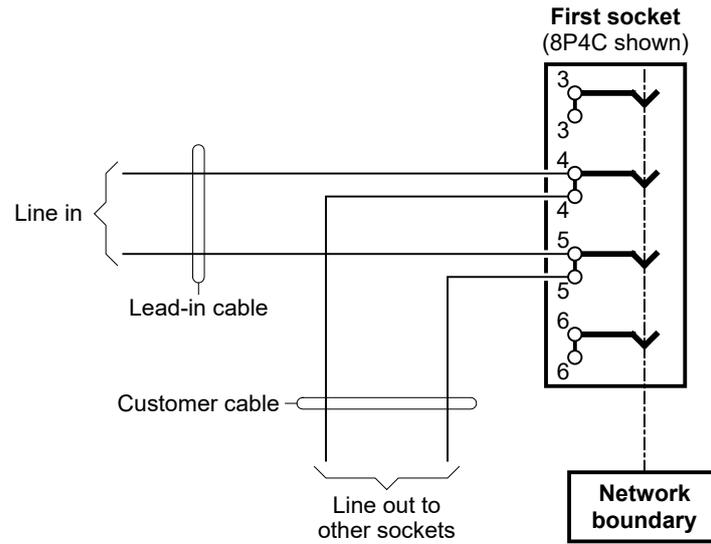
(b) Optical network terminal

Note 1: The above drawings show typical NTDs for twisted pair and optical fibre Telecommunications Network Cables. The 'side of the device nearest to the End-User' means the terminals or Sockets provided on the NTD for the connection of CABLE or equipment on the 'Customer side' of the NTD.

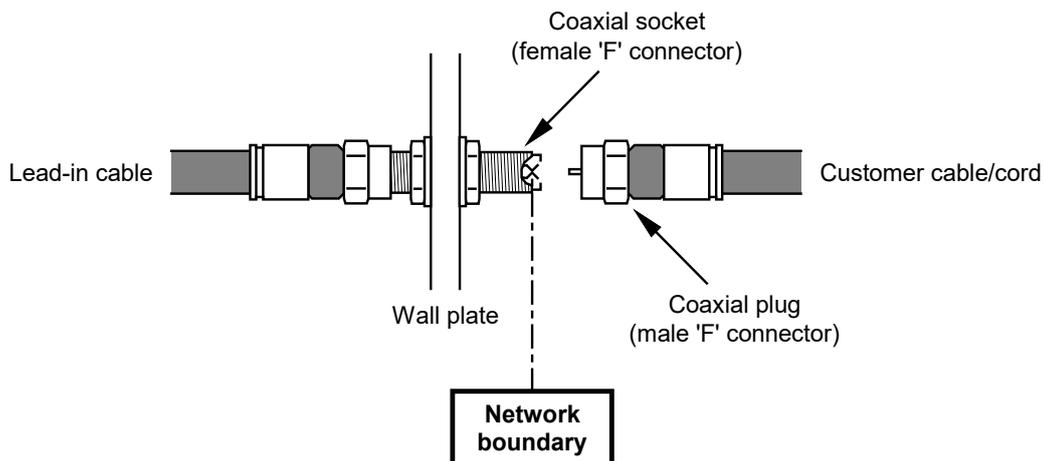
Note 2: Allowable connection points for Customer Cable or Customer Equipment will usually be indicated on the NTD label or user guide.

Figure J19

Precise location of the network boundary at a network termination device



(a) Twisted pair cable



(b) Coaxial cable (e.g. a broadband internet installation)

Note 1: The 'side nearest to the End-User' means the Socket contacts to which connection may be made by a mating Plugs.

Note 2: For twisted-pair lead-in Cable only, a Cabling Provider is authorised by Carriers to connect Customer Cabling to the Socket wiring terminals (refer to Clause 15.4.2.1). In other cases (e.g. coaxial lead-in Cable), a Cabling Provider may only connect Customer Cabling to the front of the Socket via a mating Plug (refer to Clause 15.4.2.2).

Note 3: Figure J20(b) provides an example of a coaxial Cable termination. See Table J1 for a summary of network boundaries using fibre, HFC and wireless terminations.

Figure J20

Precise location of the network boundary at the first socket

APPENDIX

K Cabling Provider Rules (INFORMATIVE)

K.1 Introduction

The Cabling Provider Rules place requirements on Cabling Providers performing Customer Cabling Work and sets out arrangements for the operation of an industry-run system for the registration of Cabling Providers. Non-compliance with the Cabling Provider Rules is an offence under the Telecommunications Act 1997 (the Act).

Two key requirements under the Cabling Provider Rules relate to the supervision and certification of Cabling Work. For information, a summary of these requirements is set out in Clauses K.2 and K.3 below.

Reliance on this summary may not ensure compliance with the requirements of the Cabling Provider Rules and therefore the reader is advised to refer to the provisions of the Rules.

K.2 Supervision of unregistered cabling provider

If a registered Cabling Provider supervises an unregistered Cabling Provider, the registered Cabling Provider is required to ensure that—

- (a) the unregistered Cabling Provider is directly supervised, at all times while performing Cabling Work, by a registered Cabling Provider;
- (b) each registered Cabling Provider who supervises that Cabling Work accepts full responsibility for the standard of the work performed under the provider's supervision; and
- (c) all work performed under supervision complies fully with—
 - (i) the competency requirements mentioned in paragraph 3.1 (2) (a) of the Cabling Provider Rules; and
 - (ii) the Wiring Rules (this Standard).

K.3 Certification of cabling work

K.3.1 This section applies whenever a Cabling Provider finishes any Cabling Work (including a discrete part of a Cabling project) other than—

- (a) running Jumpers on distribution frames;
- (b) transposing Jumpers on distribution frames;
- (c) removing Jumpers from distribution frames; or
- (d) replacing a piece of minor Cabling equipment (including a Plug, Socket, module or overvoltage unit).

K.3.2 The Cabling Provider who performed the Cabling Work or supervised the performance of the Cabling Work is required to—

- (a) prepare a statement that identifies the Cabling Work, and states that the Cabling Work—
 - (i) has been completed; and
 - (ii) complies fully with the Wiring Rules; and
- (b) give the statement to—
 - (i) the employer of a Cabling Provider;
 - (ii) if the Cabling Provider has been engaged to perform the Cabling Work through a person other than an employer — that person; or
 - (iii) in any other case — the entity that engaged the Cabling Provider to perform the Cabling Work.

K.3.3 The statement may be prepared—

- (a) in an approved form; or
- (b) as an attachment to, or an entry on, an invoice or receipt that relates to the Cabling Work.

K.3.4 The statement may show whether the Cabling Work was performed by the Cabling Provider—

- (a) on the Cabling Provider's own behalf;
- (b) as an employee; or
- (c) on behalf of a person who is not the employer of the Cabling Provider.

K.3.5 If the Cabling Provider who performed the Cabling Work gives the statement to a person mentioned in subparagraph (2) (b) (i) or (ii), that person is required to give the statement to the entity that asked for the Cabling Work to be performed.

K.3.6 A Cabling Provider who prepares a statement mentioned in subsection (2) is required to—

- (a) keep a copy of the statement for at least one year after preparing it; and
- (b) make the copy available, on reasonable request, to—
 - (i) the ACMA and its inspectors; or
 - (ii) an auditor authorised by the ACMA to inspect the copy for the purpose of monitoring compliance with the Rules.

K.4 Compliance with the Wiring Rules

Another important requirement under the Cabling Provider Rules is that all Customer Cabling Work is required to comply with the Wiring Rules (this Standard).

K.5 Where to get a copy of the Cabling Provider Rules

A copy of the Cabling Provider Rules can be downloaded, free of charge, from the Federal Register of Legislation website at

<https://www.legislation.gov.au/Series/F2014L01684>.

APPENDIX

L Guidance for domestic installations (INFORMATIVE)

Customer Cabling in domestic Premises should be—

- (a) a minimum of category 5 twisted pair Cable;
- (b) have a Cable run not exceeding 90 m from the central point to each Telecommunications Outlet;

Note: Further length restrictions may apply as a result of heat and specific applications. Refer to AS/NZS 11801.1 and AS 11801.4.

- (c) point-to-point without taps or joints;
- (d) installed in conformance with the Cable manufacturer's installation instructions in regard to maximum hauling tension, minimum bending radii and ensuring no twisting or kinking of Cables;
- (e) terminated in matching 8P8C modular Sockets (such as category 5 or higher) to the wiring plan T568A (refer to Figure C1 and Table C1); and

Note: Fixed Cabling should be terminated onto the Socket of an outlet and not directly to a modular Plug, except where permitted under Clause 5.9.1.

- (f) tested for 1 Gbps Ethernet capability in both directions as a minimum.

APPENDIX

M Aerial cabling (INFORMATIVE)

While care has been taken to correctly interpret this Standard in this Appendix, ultimately it is the responsibility of Cabling Providers to ensure that they comply with the requirements of the Standard. Note that the requirements of this Standard only apply to Customer Cabling and not to Carrier Cabling (e.g. Lead-In Cabling). Carrier Cabling is installed to the relevant Carrier's requirements and is not subject to the requirements of this Standard. Customer Cabling may, however, be installed outside the boundaries of Customer Premises subject to the approval of the relevant government authority or the owner of any land traversed by the Cabling, as applicable.

M.1 Introduction

Aerial Cabling is potentially the most unsafe form of Cabling to use, especially when installed in the vicinity of aerial power lines. Aerial Cabling is fully exposed to the elements (e.g. sun, wind, rain and snow) and to human encounter, so care needs to be taken to ensure that the Cabling stays put in adverse weather and that its mere existence does not create a hazard for a passing person or vehicle.

The Aerial Cabling requirements set out in this Standard are relatively straightforward if the Cabling is not to be installed in the vicinity of aerial power Cabling. With aerial telecommunications Cabling on its own, only the following factors need to be considered—

- (a) Cable compliance (especially UV resistance);
- (b) the integrity of the poles or other supporting structures (a Building can also be a suitable support structure);
- (c) the integrity of the Cable fastenings on the poles; and
- (d) ground clearance (height of the Cable from ground).

These aspects are discussed further in M.2 to M.5.

M.2 Cable compliance

Aerial Cable should not be filled with grease or gel. Filled Cable is only required for Underground Cabling, which is invariably immersed in water, and is unnecessary and undesirable with aerial Cable (which is permanently 'hanging out to dry'), because—

- (a) the grease/gel adds to the weight of the Cable; and
- (b) grease/gel can create a slipping hazard for a Cabling Provider if it is transferred from the hands or gloves of the Cabling Provider to the rungs of the ladder.

For short distances, e.g. a single span of Cable between two Buildings, it is permissible to use indoor type Cable (such as category 5 or category 6 unshielded twisted pair) installed in (UV stabilised) Conduit to protect it from UV exposure and tied at regular intervals to a catenary wire suspended between the Buildings.

Otherwise use aerial Cable manufactured specifically for outdoor application using UV-resistant materials.

If a long Aerial Cabling installation is planned, first it needs to be determined how far the Cable can be safely spanned between supports. To do this, assuming it is planned to use Cable with an integral Bearer, the aerial Cable manufacturer's specifications need to be checked. The manufacturer's data sheets should indicate the weight of the Cable for a given length, Bearer tension limits and allowable sag at various temperatures. The data sheets may even recommend minimum and maximum span lengths (pole spacing). This data should be used in conjunction with the information described below to select the class, size and type of pole to support the aerial Cable.

M.3 Pole integrity

The installed poles need to be of sufficient strength and durability to avoid falling over or breaking in normal service (including climbing by a Cabling Provider) or under adverse weather conditions, for the anticipated life of the Cable installation. There are some standards available to provide guidance.

If wooden poles are used, they should comply with AS 3818.11 *Timber - Heavy structural products - Visually graded Part 11: Utility poles*. Steel poles should comply with AS/NZS 4677 *Steel utility services poles*, while concrete poles should comply with AS/NZS 4065 *Concrete utility services poles*. The poles should be selected and installed in accordance with AS/NZS 4676 *Structural design requirements for utility services poles*. Compliance with the relevant requirements of these standards should ensure that the requirements of this Standard are met.

Of course, no poles will last forever and they should be inspected regularly to check their ongoing integrity.

Note that a tree is not a 'pole' or a 'structure', so the use of trees to carry Aerial Cabling is not supported by this Standard. Trees are not 'fit for the purpose' and should not be used.

M.4 Aerial cable fastenings

The Cable fastenings need to be capable of supporting the dead weight of the Cable and any accumulated snow or ice with an added dynamic loading factor for strong winds. The manufacturer's data for the device to be used combined with the Cable data described above should be consulted to ensure that the Cable fastening will not fail in normal service or under adverse weather conditions.

M.5 Ground clearance

This Standard specifies minimum clearances for three different scenarios, described below and illustrated in Figure M1.

For non-trafficable areas, the lowest part of any aerial Cable or attachment is required to be at least 2.7 m from the ground. This should put the Cabling out of reach of the average person. For example, a person 1.8 m tall cannot generally reach higher than 2.4 m without standing on a chair or a ladder. 2.7 m normally provides a safety margin of 0.3 m in this respect.

Note: Earlier versions of this Standard allowed a minimum ground clearance of 2.4 m in non-trafficable areas, so some existing aerial Cables (installed prior to 2002) may be

as low as 2.4 m above the ground. If such Cables are altered or replaced, they should be installed to the current required minimum clearance of 2.7 m in accordance with Clause 19.2 of this Standard.

If the aerial Cable traverses a residential driveway, a minimum ground clearance of 3.5 m is required to allow, for example, a removal van to pass underneath it. At least 4.9 m clearance is required above a commercial/industrial driveway or any roadway or public footway to allow for the passage of larger commercial vehicles. The relevant authority may require a higher clearance than 4.9 m over any public roadway or footway as a condition of any approval to cross that roadway or footway with a Cable.

Note 1: Earlier versions of this Standard allowed a minimum ground clearance of 3.7 m for 'driveways not used by high vehicles', which may have included some commercial/industrial driveways. Therefore, some existing aerial Cables above commercial/industrial driveways (installed prior to 2002) may be as low as 3.7 m above the ground. If such Cables are altered or replaced, they should be installed to the current required minimum clearance of 4.9 m in accordance with Clause 19.2 of this Standard.

Note 2: In previous versions of this Standard, a minimum ground clearance of 3.7 m was required for areas where horse riding was likely and where the aerial Cable was installed at a horizontal distance from any fence greater than 1 m. This requirement was removed in the 2001 edition of this Standard and no longer applies.

Remember that the Cable will sag more in hot weather as the Cable expands, so more height needs to be added if installing the Cable in cooler weather so that the minimum ground clearance will be maintained at maximum summer temperatures. Using the manufacturer's tables of sags and tensions helps overcome this problem.

Cable height (and separation distances from any nearby power lines) should be measured using lengths of UPVC Conduit, a telescopic height measuring rod, or an optical height finder. Measuring tapes or any conductive material should not be used for this purpose, particularly near power lines.

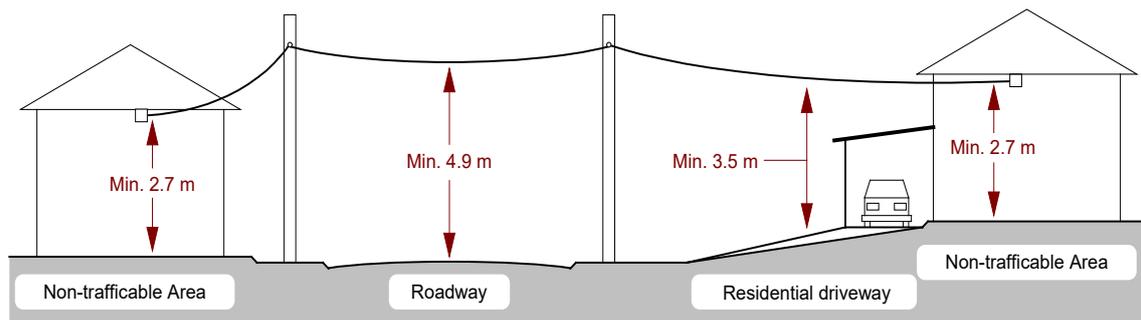


Figure M1

Minimum aerial customer cabling ground clearances required by this Standard

M.6 Aerial cabling installed near aerial power cabling

The requirements get complicated if aerial Customer Cabling is to be installed near aerial power lines or on shared poles with power. The complications are due to the variable nature and voltages of aerial power Cabling and the different hazards that arise with each power Cabling arrangement.

The simplest arrangement involves running a single span of aerial Cable between two Buildings where there is also an insulated, sheathed aerial power Cable between the Buildings. There are two options, either to—

- (a) install the Aerial Cabling independently at a distance from the aerial power Cabling of at least 2.4 m — or 10 m if the power Cabling is owned or operated by a power utility or it carries High Voltage (HV); or
- (b) install the Aerial Cabling on the same catenary support as the aerial power Cabling as long as—
 - (i) the aerial power Cable is insulated Low Voltage (LV) Cable that is not owned or operated by a power utility;
 - (ii) either the power Cable or the telecommunications Cable is installed in insulating Conduit; and
 - (iii) the telecommunications Cable/Conduit is independently secured to the catenary support.

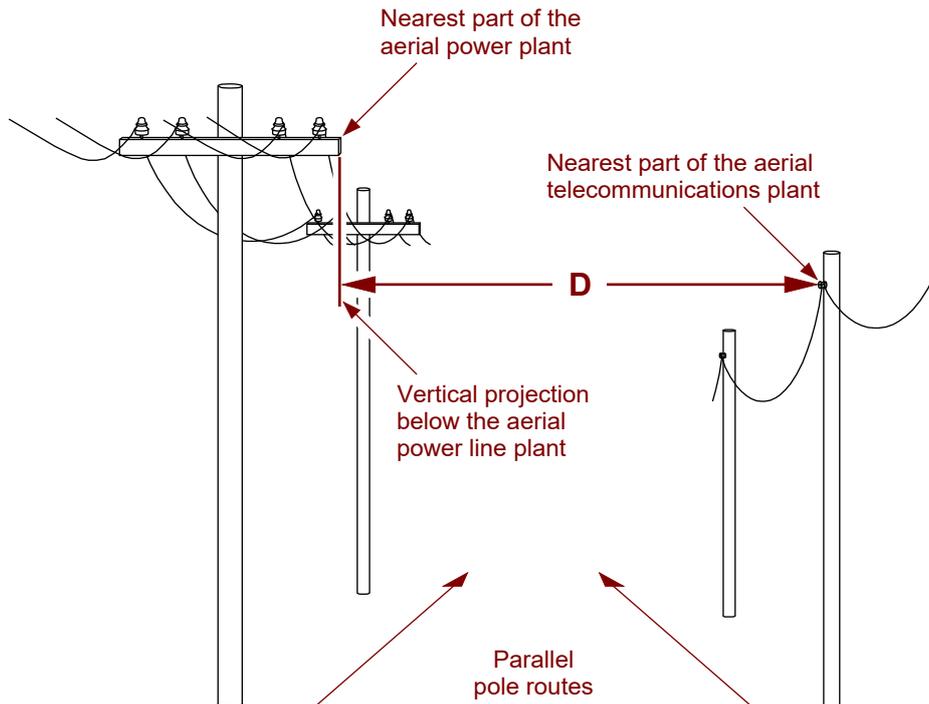
The more complicated arrangements are described below.

M.7 Telecommunications poles running parallel with power poles

If the aerial telecommunications Cabling runs on separate poles alongside or near aerial power lines, adequate separation needs to be provided between the services to allow each service to be safely accessed by the relevant utility without danger of touching or damaging the other service. This has nothing to do with Low Frequency Induction (LFI), which needs to be considered separately if—

- (a) the power lines are HV;
- (b) the telecommunications Cable contains any Electrically Conductive Elements; and
- (c) the length of Customer Cabling exposure to the power lines exceeds 200 m (refer to Appendix H for details).

Figure M2 illustrates the requirements for separation of power and telecommunications Aerial Cabling plant (poles, Cables, etc.). Essentially, where the power lines exceed 330 kV (usually supported by towers), sufficient space (namely 50 m) is required to accommodate the power utility's machinery to access the power line plant. For power lines not exceeding 330 kV, a lesser distance (10 m) is required to accommodate, for example, an elevated platform vehicle ('cherry picker'), to access either the power lines or the telecommunications Cabling. For insulated LV Power lines not owned or operated by a power utility, 2.4 m separation is required to ensure that a worker accessing either service (e.g. by ladder) will not accidentally come into contact with or damage the other service.



Note: Distance 'D' is required to be at least—

- (a) 50 m for HV Power lines exceeding 330 kV (these are usually installed on towers);
- (b) 10 m for other HV Power lines;
- (c) 10 m for uninsulated LV Power lines and power utility owned/operated LV Power lines; and
- (d) 2.4 m for insulated LV Power lines not owned/operated by a power utility.

Figure M2

Pictorial representation of the requirements of Clause 19.1.2.1 of this Standard

M.8 Crossing power lines and shared poles with power

There are some cases where aerial crossings or shared poles are prohibited for any type of Customer Cabling (i.e. whether optical fibre or metallic Cables/Bearers) and separate poles will need to be erected for the telecommunications Cabling or the Cabling will need to be installed underground.

Aerial crossings are prohibited for any aerial HV Power lines exceeding 330 kV (the Customer Cabling needs to be installed underground for at least 50 m each side of the crossing in such cases). Why 50 m? Because it is not permissible to locate aerial telecommunications plant within 50 m of 330 kV power lines (refer to Figure M2).

Attachment of Customer Cabling to any pole or structure carrying aerial power is prohibited under any of the following circumstances:

- (a) If the owner of the pole or structure does not authorise the Customer Cabling attachment.
- (b) If the pole or structure supports HV Power lines exceeding 66 kV (whether or not there are LV Power lines installed below the HV lines).
- (c) If the pole or structure carries an HV power transformer.

If none of conditions (a) to (c) applies and the Customer Cabling does not contain any Electrically Conductive Elements (e.g. optical fibre with integral non-conductive Bearer/ strength member), the Cabling may attach to a pole or structure carrying aerial power lines subject to the separation requirements described in M.9 below.

If none of conditions (a) to (c) applies and the Customer Cabling does contain Electrically Conductive Elements, the Cabling may only attach to a pole or structure carrying HV Power lines if—

- (a) there is an existing LV Power line below the HV Power lines and the pole or structure is not conductive (e.g. not made of metal or concrete); or
- (b) the attachment is for the purpose of crossing the power lines only and the pole or structure is not conductive.

State/Territory electrical codes may require that the installer of any telecommunications Cabling that is to be installed within the vicinity of any power Cabling be appropriately trained and accredited, e.g. by successfully completing a 'power awareness' course.

M.9 Separation from power for crossings and shared poles

The requirements for separation of aerial telecommunications Cabling and aerial power lines are mainly intended to minimise hazards for telecommunications and power workers required to access the telecommunications and power plant.

Where aerial telecommunications Cable cross aerial power lines or are installed on the same pole or structure as aerial power lines, with one notable exception illustrated in Figure M3, they are required to be installed below the power lines. This is to avoid the need to haul telecommunications Cables over the power lines before stringing them up and so that a telecommunications worker doesn't need to climb or reach over the power lines to access the telecommunications Cabling — to do so may require the person to be an accredited electrical worker.

The separation requirements for in-span crossings are shown in Figure M4 while the requirements for crossings attached to power poles are illustrated in Figure M5.

Figure M6 and Figure M7 show the requirements for separation of telecommunications and power cable and fittings on shared poles.

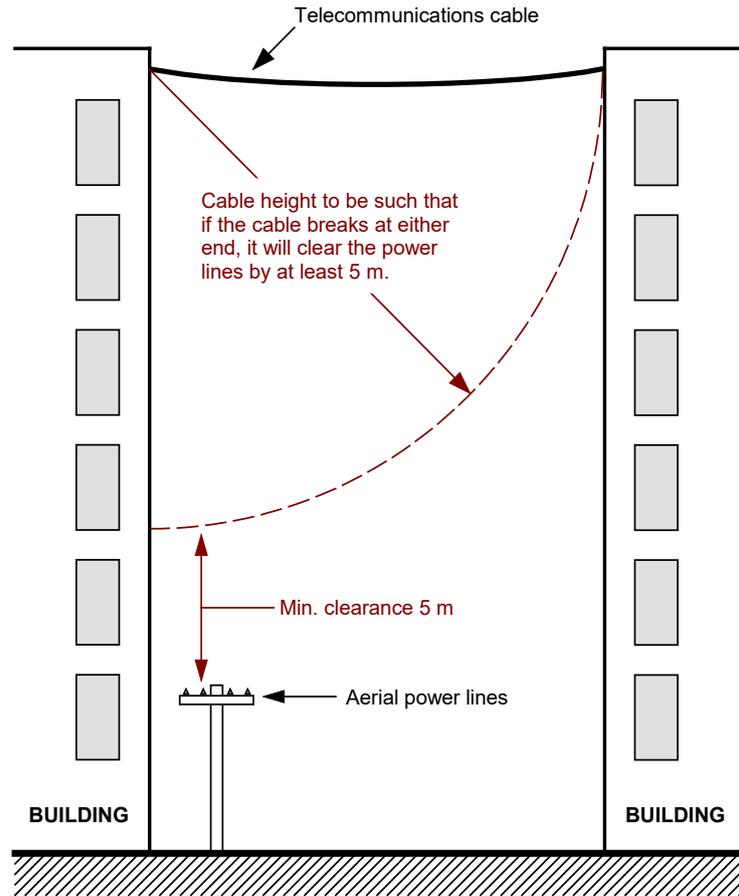
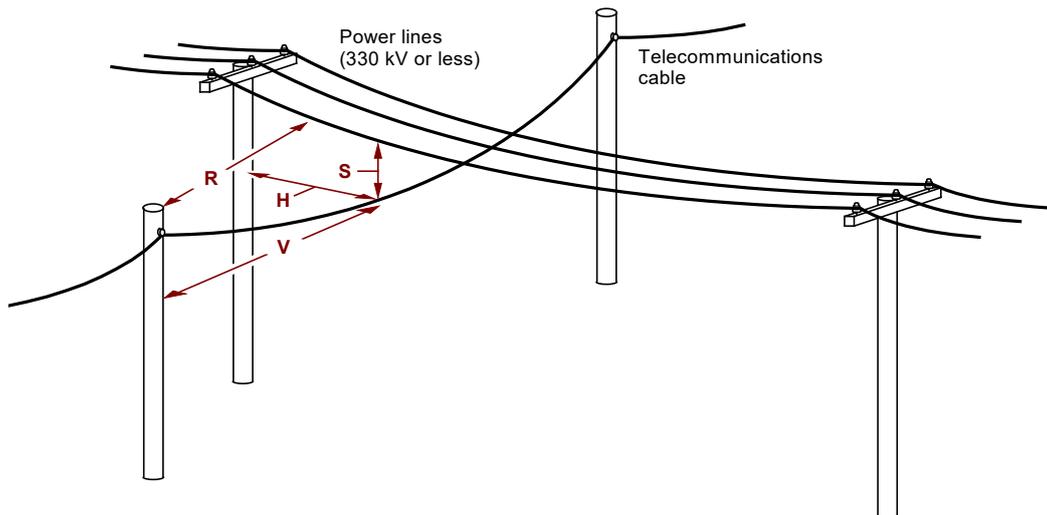


Figure M3

Crossing above aerial power lines (cable suspended between tall buildings)



Note 1: The in-span crossing is required to be as far as practicable from the middle of the aerial power line span as long as—

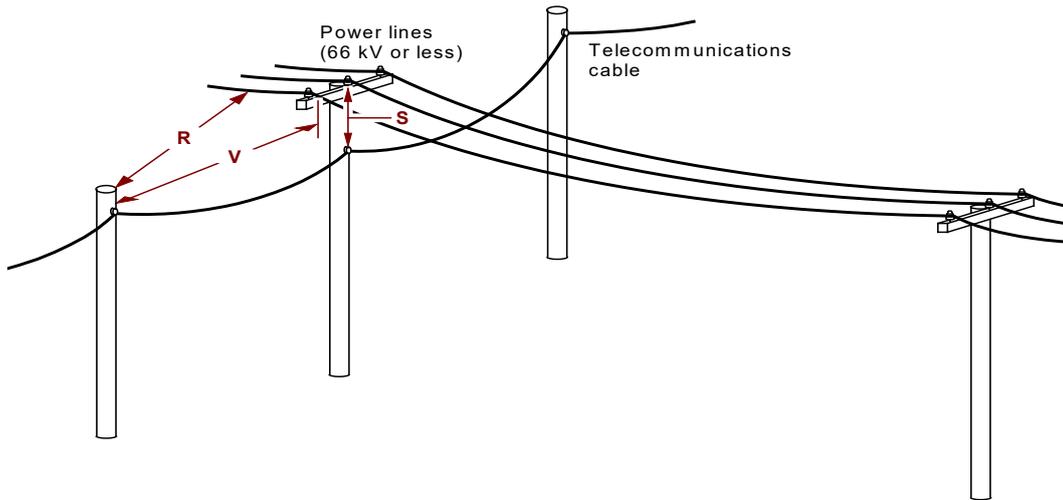
- (a) If the pole carries only LV Power lines, 'H' is no less than 2.4 m
- (b) If the pole carries HV Power lines, 'H' is no less than 3.6 m.

Note 2: 'S' is required to be at least 0.6 m for LV Power lines or from 1.2 m to 4.6 m for HV Power lines depending on the voltage of the power lines (see Table 5 of this Standard).

Note 3: 'V' is the distance between the telecommunications pole or structure and the vertical plane below the nearest power line, which is to be at least 2.4 m unless the radial distance 'R' between any part of the telecommunications pole or structure and any point on the power line is at least the distance specified in Table 5 of this Standard (from 2.4 m to 7.5 m depending on the voltage of the power lines).

Figure M4

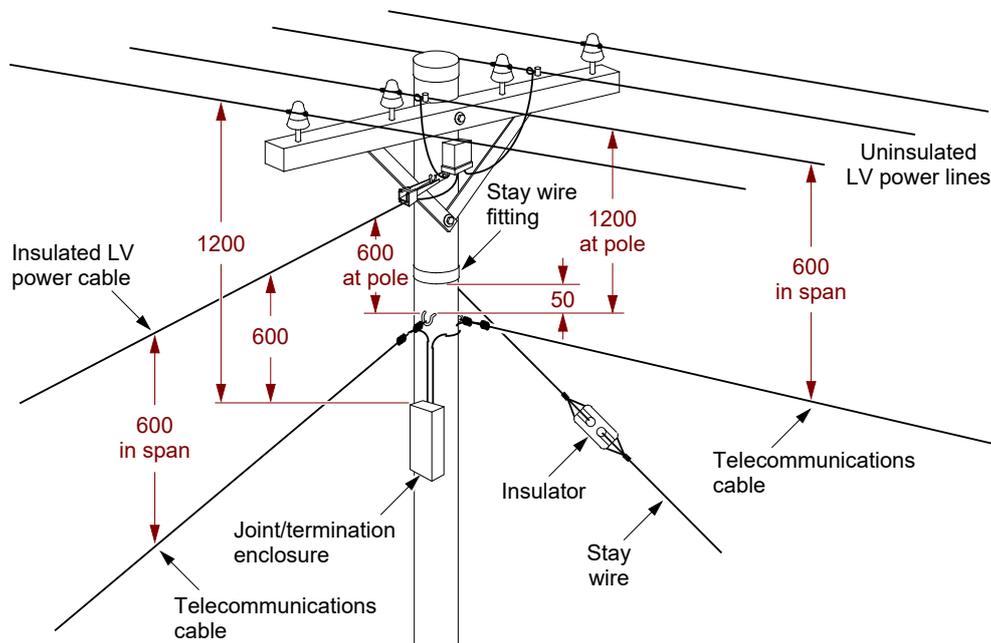
In-span crossing below aerial power lines



Note 1: 'S' is required to be at least 0.6 m for insulated LV Power lines or from 1.2 m to 3.0 m for uninsulated LV Power lines or HV Power lines depending on the voltage of the power lines (see Table 5 of this Standard).

Note 2: 'V' is the distance between the vertical plane below the nearest power line and the telecommunications pole or structure, which is to be at least 2.4 m unless the radial distance 'R' between any part of the telecommunications pole or structure and any point on the power line is at least the distance specified in Table 5 of this Standard (from 2.4 m to 4.0 m depending on the voltage of the power lines).

Figure M5
Attached crossing below aerial power lines



Note: Any joint or termination Enclosure should be installed below the aerial telecommunications Cable and is to be kept at least 50 mm away from any light fitting, stay fitting or power Conduit.

Figure M6
Minimum clearances for shared poles

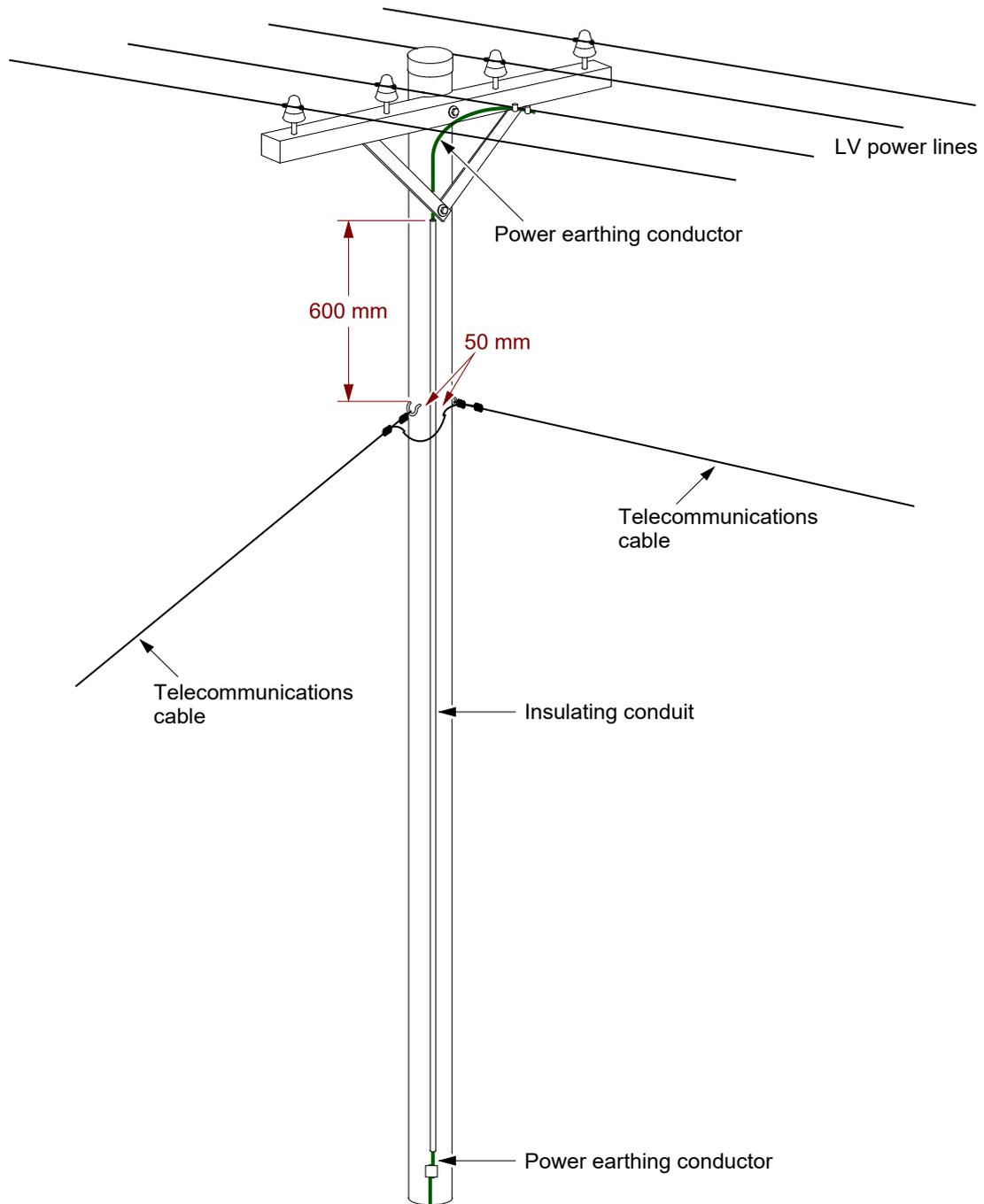


Figure M7

Insulation of, and clearance from, any power earthing conductor on a shared pole

M.10 Cable bearer insulation

Where a telecommunications Cable is attached to a pole carrying power lines, it is required to have an integral insulated Bearer that is to remain insulated at any fastening or fitting at the pole. For smaller Cables, the insulated Bearer should be tied off to an insulator ring as shown in Figure M8. With larger Cables, the Bearer should be tied off using a metallic pre-formed termination, in which case the termination needs to be wrapped with several layers of durable insulating tape or shrouded using durable insulating material.

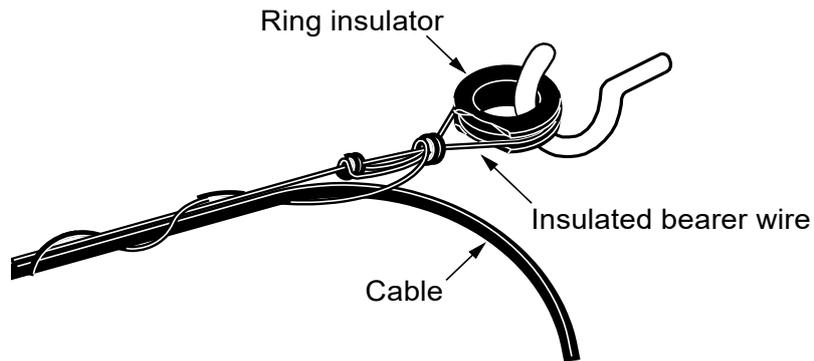


Figure M8

Termination of an insulated bearer (small cables) on a shared pole

APPENDIX

N Cabling between buildings (INFORMATIVE)

N.1 Introduction

Where Cabling is installed between two or more Buildings, whether the Buildings are contained in the same Premises or separate Premises, Clause 17.3.1 of this Standard applies. Clause 17.3.1 highlights some factors that need to be considered for the safety of a person and the Connected equipment. This Appendix contains cross-references to other clauses in which mandatory requirements may apply independently of Clause 17.3.1, namely Clauses 10.1 to 10.4 *Surge suppression* and Clause 5.2 *Manufacturer's instructions*. Only Clause 5.2 (b) may preclude the use of twisted pair Cabling between Buildings for the connection of certain equipment.

Under Clause 5.2 (b), if the installation instructions or operating manual for the equipment states that the equipment must only be Connected to metallic Cabling that does not leave the Building in which the equipment is located (or words to that effect), this becomes a mandatory requirement under this Standard.

There are circumstances where it is safe to use metallic Cables between Buildings. There are also cases where the use of metallic Cabling is essential, e.g. to remotely power IP cameras or other low-power devices using Power over Ethernet (PoE). For these reasons, the use of metallic Cabling between Buildings is not prohibited outright by AS/CA S009. However, if the purpose of the Cabling is to connect equipment whose manufacturer or supplier does not support the connection of metallic Outdoor Cabling to the equipment (e.g. some Telco FTTP NTDs), the Cabling Provider should use another medium (such as Wi-Fi or optical fibre) to make the connection.

FTTP NTDs are usually earthed, which makes them particularly susceptible to damage from lightning or power system surges induced into Outdoor Cabling — and they are expensive to repair or replace. Other equipment with Ethernet or VOIP Ports, such as modems, gateways, routers and switches, are not usually earthed but they still may be damaged by the same surges — but these may be cheaper to replace and are usually the Customer's responsibility.

N.2 What is the risk

Any Cabling installed between Buildings will have some exposure to possible lightning activity and, if both Buildings have Mains power connected, power differentials. These can cause what are broadly described as 'surges' or 'overvoltages'. There are three things to consider in the case of lightning or power surges/overvoltages (in order of importance)—

- (a) the safety of persons;
- (b) the risk of fire; and
- (c) equipment damage.

This Standard directly addresses Item (a) and is indirectly concerned with Items (b) and (c) above simply because fire is a risk to personal safety and property.

Damage described in Item (c) can ignite a fire which invokes concern (b) and may also affect end-to-end performance (network integrity).

N.3 Safety of the end-user

Clause 10.1 requires the Cabling Provider to assess the need for surge suppression for the protection of a person using a telecommunications service in accordance with Australian Standard AS 4262.1, where—

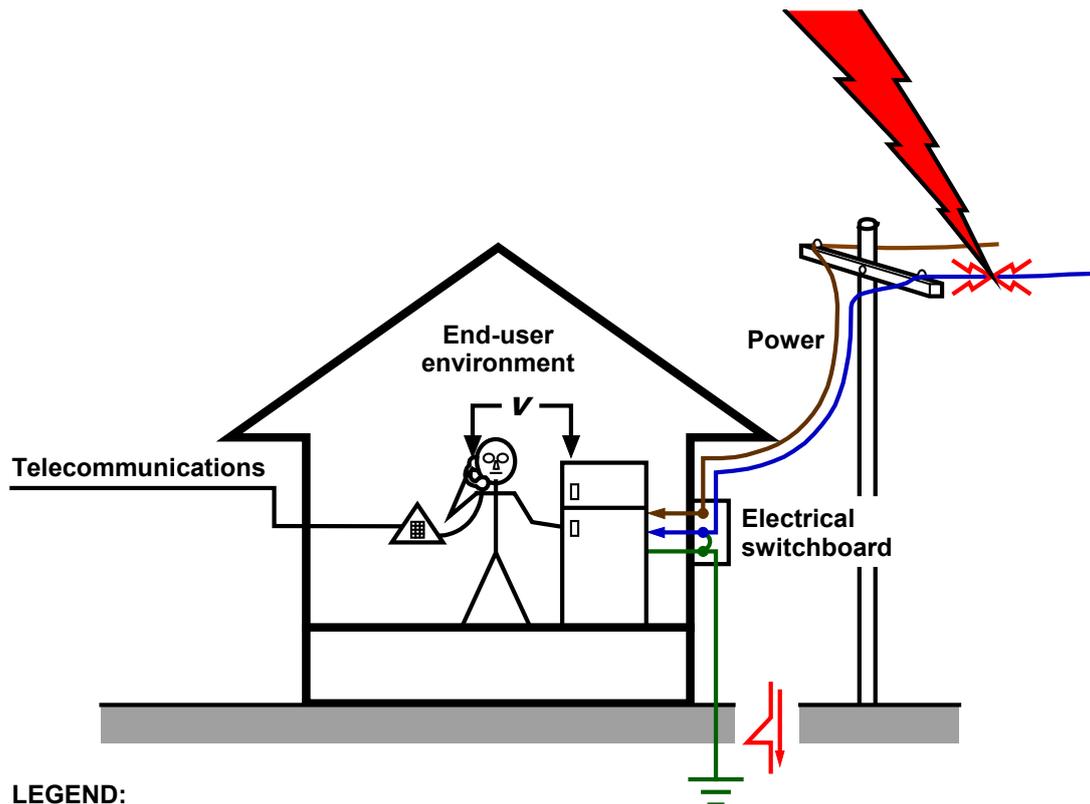
- (a) twisted pair Customer Cabling is provided to a Building or structure;
- (b) the Network Boundary is not located in or on that Building or structure; and
- (c) the Cabling will be used to connect Terminal Equipment in or on that Building or structure.

Note: Terminal Equipment is defined as peripheral equipment operated by a person to access a telecommunications service, such as a telephone instrument, headset, fax machine, modem or other equipment that may be handled by the person. Equipment that is not usually handled by an Ordinary Person, such as a fixed, IP camera, is not Terminal Equipment by definition.

If the risk of injury to a person is assessed as high, Clause 10.2 requires the Cabling Provider to install surge suppression in accordance with the relevant requirements of AS 4262.1.

In assessing the safety of a person per AS 4262.1, it is always assumed that the person is in an earthed environment, i.e. standing on a concrete floor or touching an earthed object like plumbing or an earthed electrical appliance (refrigerator, toaster, etc.) and touching telecommunications equipment at the same time (e.g. a telephone handset). There are three potential sources of overvoltage that may cause injury to a person in such circumstances, explained below:

- (a) **Power lines** — if there is a power surge or a lightning strike to the power lines (anywhere within the power grid, not just at the Premises), the overvoltage will be shunted to earth via the Mains supply neutral which is earthed via the neutral-earth (MEN) link at the electrical switchboard in the Premises. This will momentarily raise the local earth potential many thousands of volts. This means any object in electrical contact with the local mass of earth (e.g. concrete floor slab) or connected to the Protective Earth of the electrical switchboard (e.g. refrigerator, toaster, etc.) will be at the raised earth potential. If a person also happens to be touching an object electrically Connected to a telecommunications Line (the most common example being a telephone handset) and that Line is remotely Connected to an earth (e.g. at the distant telephone exchange or at another Building), there will be a potential difference (voltage) between the locally earthed body of the person and, via the telecommunications equipment, the distant earth on the telecommunications Line. Most overvoltages originate from the power lines, not the telecommunications Line, and this is illustrated in Figure 1 of AS 4262.1, reproduced in Figure N1 below.



LEGEND:

-  **Overvoltage-initiated current**
-  **Voltage difference between telecommunication conductors and the end-user environment**

Note: Experience has shown that significant overvoltages may occur regardless of whether the telecommunications Lines or power lines are aerial or underground. Without protection measures (see Figure N2), voltage **V** may be tens of thousands of volts.

Figure N1

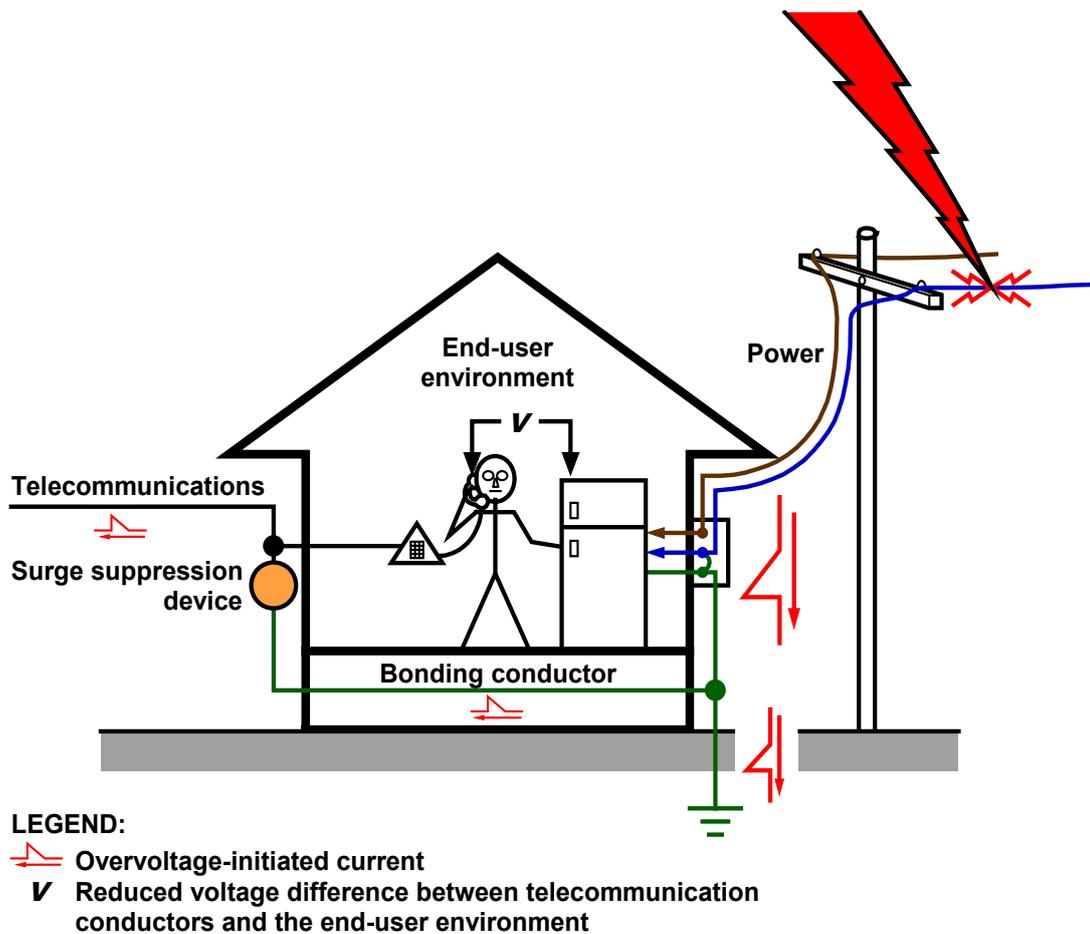
An example of lightning-induced overvoltages which can develop voltage differences between the end-user environment and the telecommunications conductors

- (b) **Telecommunications line** — if there is a lightning strike to the telecommunications Line (anywhere within the Telecommunications Network, not just at the Premises), the overvoltage will appear on the telecommunications Line and, if a person is in contact with the local earth, as in Item (a) *Power lines*, there will be a potential difference (voltage) between the locally earthed body of the person and, via the telecommunications equipment, the overvoltage on the telecommunications Line.
- (c) **Ground strike** —if there is a nearby lightning ground strike (including a strike to a tree or structure), the electrical potential of the local mass of earth — and, via the local electrical earth electrode, all earthed electrical appliances — will be momentarily raised many thousands of volts and the effect will be the same as described in Item (a) *Power lines*.

A remedy to protect a person from any of the above overvoltages is to install a surge suppressor on the telecommunications Line that will operate (conduct) under overvoltage conditions to bring all of the abovementioned elements (including the person) to about the same electrical potential. This principle is illustrated in Figure 2 of AS 4262.1, reproduced in Figure N2 below.

In reality, the voltage difference will, at best, be limited to about 1500 V due to the threshold ('trigger') voltage of the gas arrester and the inductance of the bonding conductor. In Australia, the handsets of telephones are required to have a minimum breakdown voltage of 7000 V. A handset is the most likely telecommunications object that a person will be holding. Surge suppression is designed to limit the potential difference (voltage) between the local earth and the telecommunications Line to less than 7000 V to minimise the risk of injury to a person holding a handset to his/her head. If any equipment that the person may be touching has a breakdown voltage of less than 7000 V (most other equipment), the person may receive an electric shock.

It is worth noting here that if a person is holding a cordless handset (which is not electrically Connected to the telecommunications Line), the risk of electric shock is eliminated — unless the person also happens to be touching the cordless base station.



NOTE: The voltage (V) depends on the length of the bonding conductor between the surge suppression device and the earthing bar of the electrical switchboard. In cases of lightning-generated overvoltages, the voltage drop along the bonding conductor (due to inductance) will be significantly greater than the surge suppression device trigger voltage. The total value of V is assumed to be about 1500 V peak but must not exceed 7000 V peak. The bonding conductor length must not exceed 10 m or voltage V will exceed 7000 V.

Figure N2

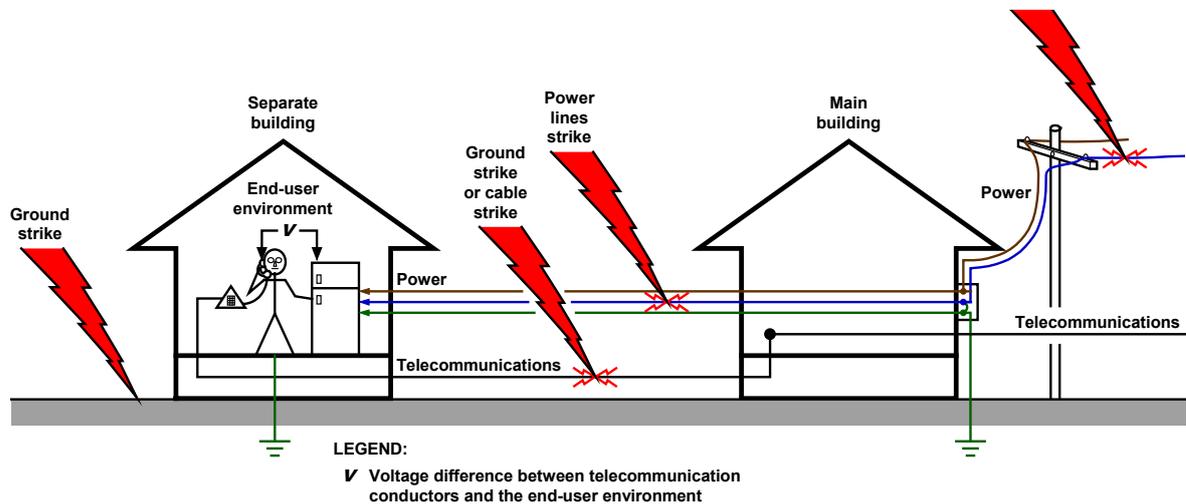
An example of a protection system which reduces overvoltages

While Figure N1 and Figure N2 show an incoming landline from a Carrier's Telecommunications Network, the same principles also apply to Cabling between two separate Buildings. The same factors that may create a shock hazard for a person in the main Building are present in the separate Building, namely—

- (a) an earthed environment;
- (b) a metallic telecommunications Line entering the Building; and
- (c) usually, electrical power lines entering the Building.

Therefore, assessment of risk at the separate Building is required in accordance with AS 4262.1.

A momentary voltage difference between the separate earthed environment in each Building or between the metallic line and one or both earths, as illustrated in Figure N3 below, may create a hazard.



Note 1: Absence of power in the separate Building does not eliminate the risk.

Note 2: If there is a separate power MEN system (i.e. electrical earth electrode) at the separate Building, there is no bond between the electrical earths at the separate BUILDINGS and the risk of one earth being at a higher potential than the other is higher.

Note 3: It is important that surge suppression is installed at the separate Building in accordance with Figure N2, as well as the main Building.

Figure N3

Possible sources of overvoltages with cabling between two buildings

N.4 Risk of fire

The surge suppression described above (and illustrated in Figure N2) will not entirely prevent overvoltages occurring between any telecommunications conductors or between the conductors and earth. At best, the overvoltages may be reduced to around 1500 V (although a 'spike' exceeding this voltage may also get through the surge suppression due to the time it takes to operate). Therefore, if the equipment or equipment Port is not designed to withstand an impulse voltage of at least 1500 V, damage to the equipment may occur. In some cases, this could result in arcing or sparking that could ignite a fire. However, such cases are rare for lightning-induced surges, which are of a very short duration.

Another overvoltage condition that is more likely to cause a fire is referred to as 'HV contact', i.e. where an aerial High Voltage power line falls onto LV Power lines or telecommunications Lines carried on the same poles. These may produce a more prolonged, low-frequency overvoltage condition that is more likely to ignite a fire at the Customer Premises. This situation is unlikely to occur in Customer Cabling.

This Standard (AS/CA S009) does not directly address the risk of fire in the above cases but Clause 5.1 applies if there is a known or suspected risk of fire, property damage or injury to any person, requiring Customer Cabling to be installed in accordance with principles of safe and sound practice.

N.5 Equipment damage

Apart from the slight possibility of fire as described above, there is generally no significant safety risk associated with damage to the equipment (i.e. usually it simply doesn't work anymore). The concerns are primarily operational and economic, i.e. loss of service and the cost of repair or replacement. However, this does affect end-to-end performance (network integrity) and it is incumbent upon the Cabling Provider to minimise the risk of damage to Cabling or equipment in accordance with Clause 5.4, which states:

'5.4 Protection against damage

*All parts of an installation **shall** be adequately protected against damage which might reasonably be expected to result from mechanical injury, exposure to weather, water or excessive dampness, corrosive fumes, accumulation of dust, steam, oil, high temperature, or any other circumstance to which they will be exposed under the conditions of their use.*

It is the last provision in this Clause that may be relevant to damage caused by overvoltages (i.e. 'any other circumstance to which they will be exposed under the conditions of their use').'

N.6 Assessment of risk in accordance with AS 4262.1

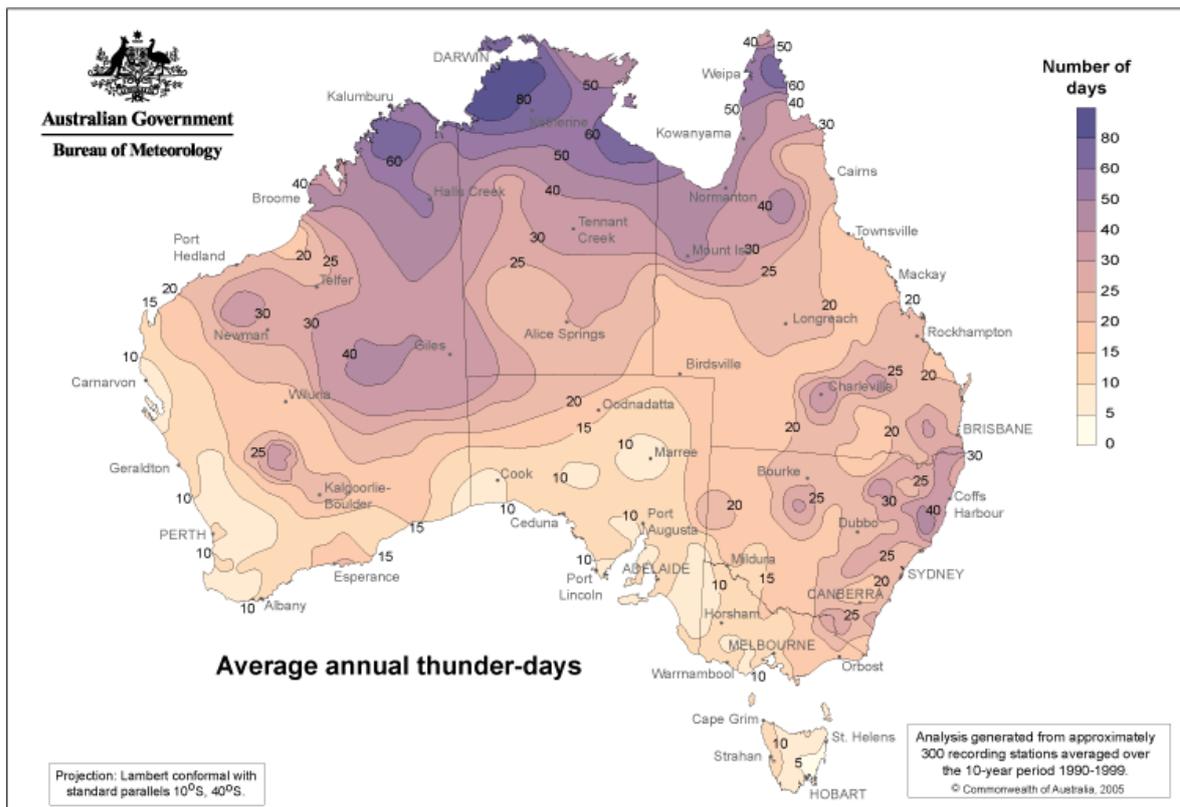
Assessment of the risk of injury to a person using a telecommunications service, as required by Clause 10.1 of this Standard, is carried out in accordance with AS 4262.1.

Factors affecting the probability of a lightning-generated overvoltage occurring are listed in AS 4262.1, as follows:

- (a) **Known lightning damage or injury history** within the vicinity of the Premises (e.g. if the Carrier has routinely installed lightning protection on the lead-in Cable or is known to routinely install it in the area).
- (b) **Number of thunder-days per year** for the geographical area (see Figure N4);
- (c) **Building density** — the number of Buildings within 100 m of the location under consideration (this provides a measure of the number of connections to earth of the local electricity distribution system).
- (d) **Soil resistivity** (see Table N1) — the higher the soil resistivity, the greater the area of influence of a lightning strike to ground and the higher the risk.
- (e) **Exposed terrain** — elevated locations over 1000 m above sea level or prominences in the terrain, such as cliff-tops, ridges, bluffs and hills, are considered to be at greater risk.
- (f) **Building construction** — concrete slab and metal-frame construction create a greater earthed environment, increasing the risk that a person may be in direct or indirect contact with local earth during a thunderstorm.

- (g) **Aerial telecommunication cable construction** — the risk is considered to be higher if the Premises is fed by more than 200 m of aerial Cable within approximately 2 km of the Premises.
- (h) **Isolated telecommunication service** — a service located in a Building or structure that is not Connected to any public electricity supply system (or where the public electricity supply earth is more than 100 m from the Building or structure at which the service is used) is considered to be at higher risk.

How the above factors are applied to determine the level of risk for a particular location is conveyed in AS 4262.1 in the form of a flow chart, reproduced in Figure N5 below.



Note 1: A thunder-day is a day on which thunder is heard at least once.

Note 2: Refer to http://www.bom.gov.au/jsp/ncc/climate_averages/thunder-lightning/index.jsp

Figure N4
Australian annual thunder-day map

Table N1
Resistivity values for various materials

Material	Resistivity ($\Omega.m$)		
	Typical	Usual limits	
Salt sea water	0.2	0.15	to 0.25
Estuarine water	0.5	0.2	to 5
Artesian water	4	2	to 12
Damp black inland soil (see Note 1)	8	5	to 100
Damp clay	10	2	to 12
Inland lake water, reservoirs	20	10	to 500
River banks, alluvium	25	10	to 100
Clay/sand mixture (see Note 2)	30	20	to 200
River water (upstream)	40	30	to 200
Concrete (see Note 3)	100	40	to 1000
Dry inland soil (see Note 1)	100	20	to 1000
Moraine gravel	2000	1000	to 10000
Coal	2000	1000	to 5000
Secondary rock	3000	1000	to 50000
Sand (see Note 2)	3000	1000	to 10000
Solid volcanic rock (see Note 4)	20000	10000	to 50000
Ice (see Note 5)	100000	10000	to 100000

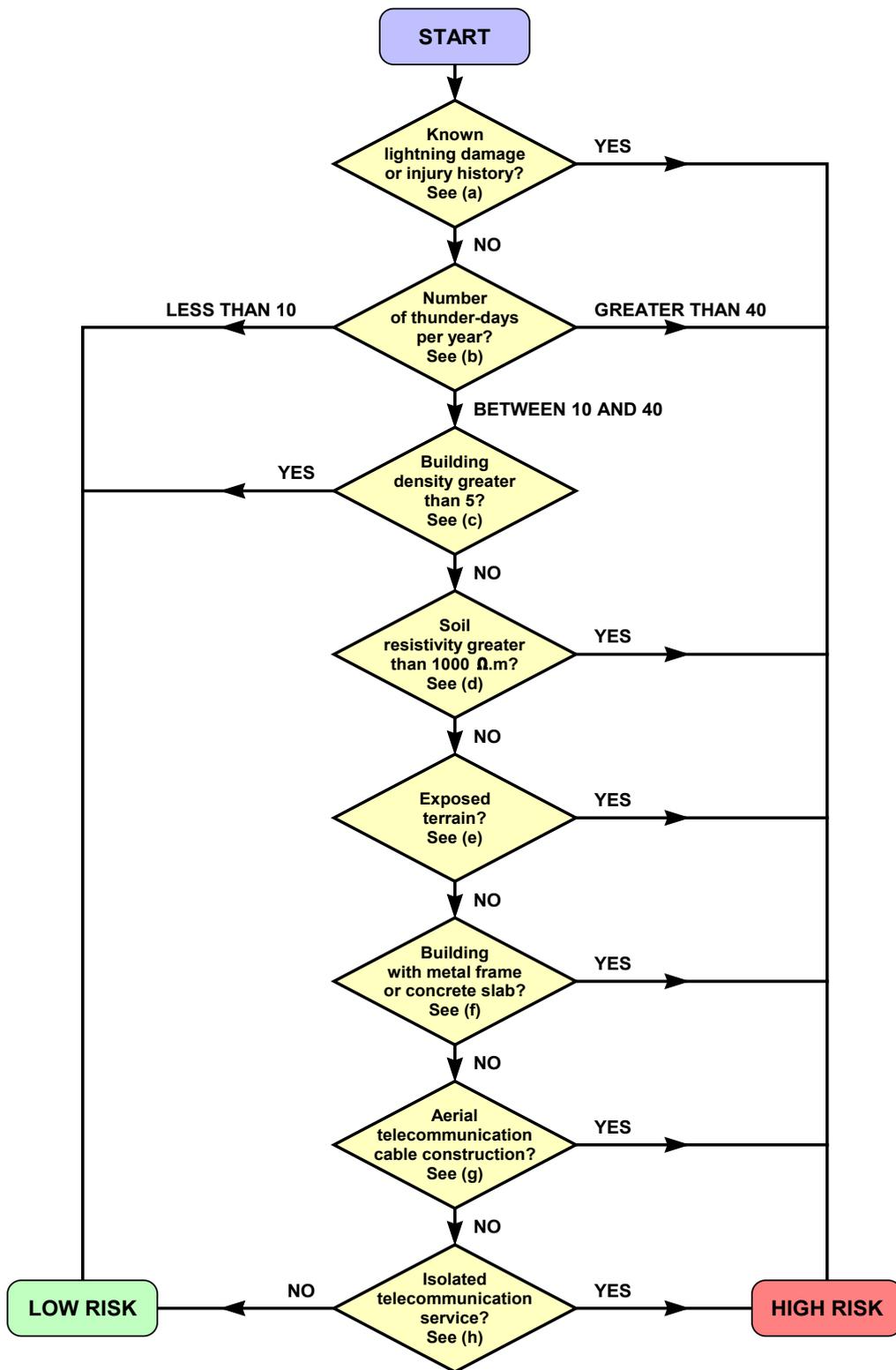
Note 1: 'Black soil' is a non-specific term applicable to vast areas of Queensland and New South Wales. The soil is characterised by a high level of dissolved salts, and undergoes considerable contraction on drying out, thus causing a significant increase in volume resistivity when dry.

Note 2: Resistivity values for a clay/sand mixture and for sand are based on measurements of a number of sites in Queensland. The resistivity of dry sand is intrinsically very high and it will serve to increase the resistivity of any material in which it may be interspersed.

Note 3: Values of resistivity for concrete apply to the cast material and do not include the effect of any reinforcing bars. The values given will assist in determining the discharge resistance from steel reinforcement to the general body of earth.

Note 4: Solid volcanic rock is often subject to fissures and faults the contents of which substantially reduce the resistivity, though not to a very satisfactory level for earthing electrode performance for lightning protection.

Note 5: Ice is included for reference. It is not anticipated that ice will be of significance in design for the normal range of conditions.



Note: In the case of doubt or uncertainty in assessing the risk, surge suppression should be fitted.

Figure N5
Assessment of the risk of injury due to lightning overvoltages

Examples

The flowchart in Figure N5, in conjunction with the thunder-day map in Figure N4, indicates that—

- (a) if there is no known history of lightning damage or injury in the vicinity; and
 - (b) the number of thunder-days in the region is less than 10 (e.g. Hobart);
- the risk is deemed to be low and there is no need for further assessment.

Conversely—

- (a) if there is a known history of lightning damage or injury in the vicinity; or
 - (b) the number of thunder-days in the region exceeds 40 (e.g. Darwin);
- the risk is deemed to be high and surge suppression needs to be installed.

Further—

- (a) if there is no known history of lightning damage or injury in the vicinity;
- (b) the number of thunder-days in the region is between 10 and 40 (e.g. Sydney); and
- (c) the number of Buildings within 100 m of the location under consideration exceeds 5;

the location is deemed to be low risk and there is no need to consider the remaining factors. However, if you get to question Item (c), Building density, and the answer is 'NO', the remaining factors must be assessed and if the answer to any of the questions is 'YES' or 'unsure', surge suppression needs to be installed.

N.7 Relevance of AS 4262.1 to cabling between buildings

Figure N3 demonstrated that the same principles apply to Cabling between two separate Buildings as with an incoming landline from a Carrier's Telecommunications Network. The only ingredients needed to create a hazard are an 'earthed environment' in each Building (see Note), a separate metallic link (telecommunications Line) between them and a momentary voltage difference between the earthed environment at each Building or between the metallic link (Line) and one or both earths. These elements are illustrated in Figure N3.

Note: 'Earthed environment' is described above and means that a person may be in physical contact with an earthed object (e.g. concrete floor slab, plumbing, etc.) or may be touching an earthed electrical appliance (e.g. refrigerator, toaster).

Where twisted pair Cabling is to be installed between Buildings, assessment in accordance with AS 4262.1 must be applied for the separate Building and all factors are relevant.

N.8 Risk of damage to equipment

As already discussed, if any equipment Connected to the twisted pair Cabling has earthed elements (e.g. FTTP NTDs), such equipment is inherently more susceptible to damage from overvoltages than equipment that does not have an earth connection. However, this does not mean that unearthed equipment is immune to damage for the following reasons:

- (a) Transverse (Line-to-Line) overvoltage induced into the Cable may exceed the maximum operating voltage of the equipment and cause component failure.
- (b) All powered equipment is Connected to earth via the neutral conductor of the 230 V power (e.g. via the MEN link at the electrical switchboard) and all electrical insulation between the neutral conductor and any other conductive element of the equipment has a finite breakdown voltage. Often this breakdown voltage is less than the surge suppression overvoltage limit for the protection of a person (1500 V to 7000 V). Therefore, there will be cases where equipment with a double-insulated power supply that is Connected to twisted pair Cabling is damaged even if surge suppression is installed for the protection of the person.

To reduce the risk of equipment damage, it may be necessary to install 'secondary' surge suppression (i.e. for the protection of equipment) in accordance with AS 4262.2.

APPENDIX

○ nbn Fibre to The Curb (Kerb) connectivity (INFORMATIVE)

Figure O1 depicts a typical FTTC connection on the national broadband network. The type of connection differs from other connections in that the First Socket is to be isolated from the existing Premises Cabling in order for the correct installation of the FTTC service.

As the Network Connection Device (NCD) powers the Distribution Point Unit (DPU), it is important to disconnect any other devices associated with the home telephone service and re-cable if necessary such that any Over The Top (OTT) service, for example a back to base alarm or medical dialler, will still operate. Further information can be found in G649.

It is important to take into account that when the nbn DPU is Connected, it will disconnect any existing service supplied on the Line (pair).

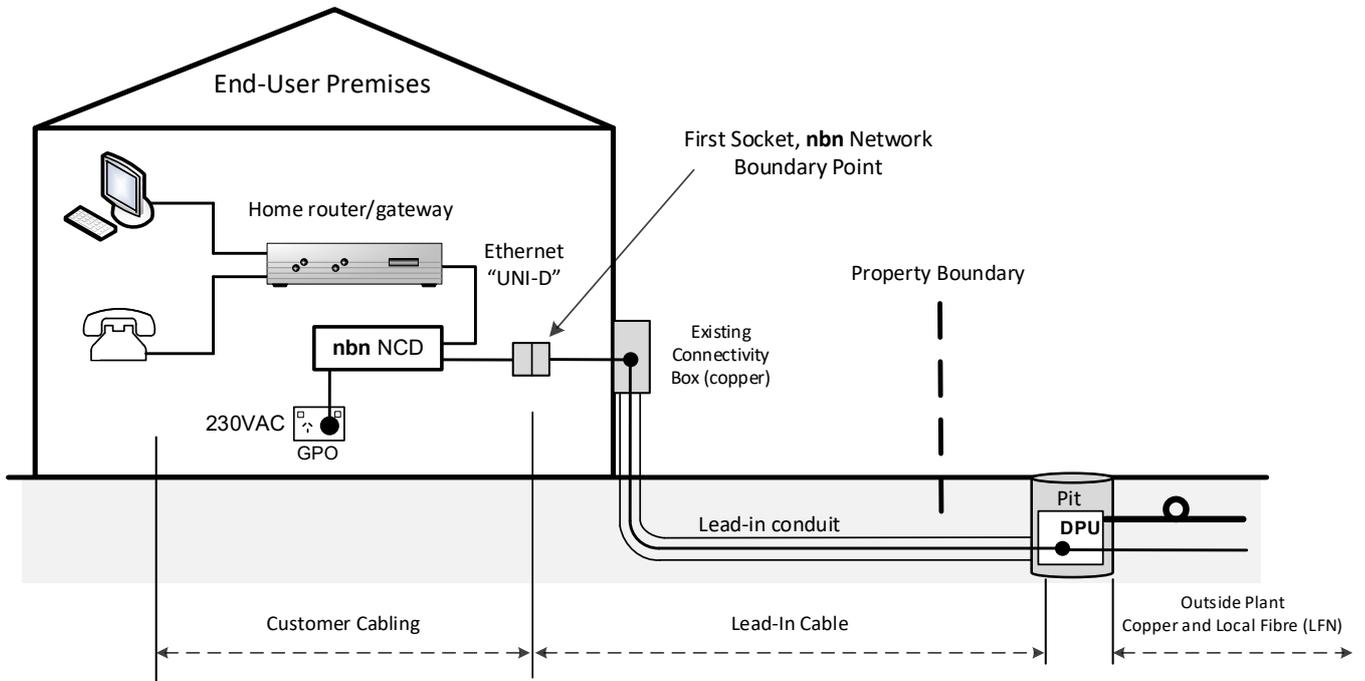
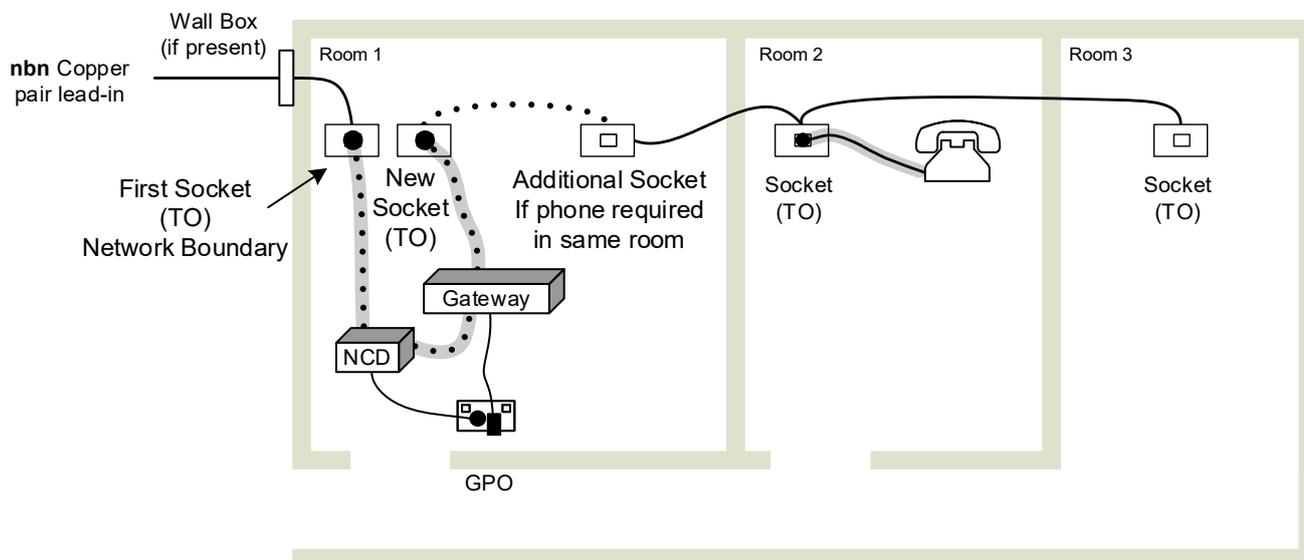


Figure O1
Typical FTTC connection showing nbn NCD and DPU

Figure O2 provides a typical Premises showing the necessary changes to existing Customer Cabling to ensure correct operation of the NCD along with a voice service provided by a Retail Service Provider (RSP).



Note 1: Remove all Customer wiring from First Socket (TO). Connect the lead-in pair for the service to be migrated to the designated First Socket only. A multiple faceplate can be used to connect the existing internal Cabling to a new Socket (TO), allowing for a voice service inside the Premises. Leave any other pair(s) Connected since they may be in use for special service(s) that are not to be disconnected or migrated.

Note 2: This Figure depicts a wall box however the lead-in may be terminated directly on the First Socket (TO) or a termination block. Any changes required to the Carrier side of the Network Boundary must be in accordance with nbn's Authority to Alter document at <https://www.nbnco.com.au/content/dam/nbnco2/documents/authority-to-alter-facilities-on-residential-and-small-businesses-premises.pdf> and if performed prior to the nbn Ready For Service (RFS) date, authorised by the Carrier responsible for delivering the existing service e.g. Telstra's 'Alteration of Telstra facilities in homes & small businesses' specification' at <https://www.telstra.com.au/content/dam/tcom/personal/help/pdf-b/012882-alteration-of-telstra-facilities-in-homes-and-small-businesses.pdf>

Note 3: The First Socket (TO) is Connected to the nbn NCD. A Socket (TO) is required to extend any voice service from the Retail Service Provider's (RSP) gateway into the existing home Cabling. The telephone service is provided by the gateway. In many cases a dual face-plate or new TO will be required, as shown in this diagram. Cabling needs to run directly from the new Socket to any existing Mode 3 Socket before connecting to other Sockets.

Note 4: Details of data Cabling is not included in this Figure.

Figure O2

Basic schematic for changes to customer wiring to ensure NCD operation

APPENDIX

P AS/NZS 60950.1 and AS/NZS 62368.1 equivalence (NORMATIVE)

P.1 General

This Standard has been revised to use the terminology and requirements of the AS/NZS 62368.1 equipment safety Standard, which was published on 15 February 2018 as a replacement for AS/NZS 60950.1.

As documented in the preface of AS/NZS 62368.1, AS/NZS 60950.1 is to be superseded four years after publication of AS/NZS 62368.1. Either Standard may be complied with during this four-year transition period.

During the transition period, references to AS/NZS 62368.1 safety clauses and terminology in this Standard may be replaced with references to the equivalent clauses in AS/NZS 60950.1.

After the transition period, requirements of AS/NZS 60950.1 can no longer be substituted for the AS/NZS 62368.1 requirements and terminology in the compliance report.

AS/NZS 62368.1 introduces revised terminology as used in AS/NZS 60950.1. To aid with the transition process in this Standard, this Appendix specifies how equivalence between the two referenced safety Standards is implemented.

The term and definition for ELV is an exception to the above, since this Standard uses the term with respect to electrical Building wiring in accordance with AS/NZS 3000, even though the term is no longer used in AS/NZS 62368.1.

P.2 Definitions for use with AS/NZS 60950.1 products

P.2.1 Extra-low voltage (ELV)

ELV is a voltage not exceeding 42.4 V peak or 60 V d.c.

Note: This differs from the ELV definition contained in AS/NZS 3000, which is more closely aligned to the TNV limits described below, i.e. 120 V d.c. or 70.7 V a.c. peak (50 V a.c. r.m.s.).

P.2.2 Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV) circuit

An SELV circuit is a secondary circuit which is so designed and protected that—

- (a) under normal operating conditions, its voltages do not exceed ELV limits at any time; and
- (b) under single fault conditions, its voltages do not exceed ELV limits for longer than 200 ms and, in any case, do not exceed 71 V peak or 120 V d.c. at any time.

Note 1: An example of an SELV circuit is a power feed from a battery or a double insulated 'plug pack'.

Note 2: A circuit that meets the above requirements, but which is subject to overvoltages from a Telecommunications Network or a Cable distribution system, is classified as a TNV circuit.

[Adapted from AS/NZS 60950.1]

P.2.3 Telecommunications network voltage (TNV)

TNV is a voltage not exceeding—

- (a) when telephone ringing signals are not present—
 - (i) 71 V peak or 120 V d.c.; or
 - (ii) if a combination of AC voltage and DC voltage is present, the sum of the AC peak voltage divided by 71 and the DC voltage divided by 120 must not exceed 1; and
- (b) when telephone ringing signals are present, voltages such that the signal complies with the criteria of either Clause M.2 or Clause M.3 of AS/NZS 60950.1 (the signal is required to be current limited and cadenced).

[Adapted from AS/NZS 60950.1]

P.2.4 Hazardous energy source

A hazardous energy source is a voltage exceeding ELV limits existing in a circuit which does not meet the requirements for either a limited current circuit or a TNV circuit as defined in AS/NZS 60950.1.

P.2.5 Restricted access location

A restricted access location is a locked room or Enclosure where appropriate signage is used to ensure accidental access is not obtained by persons who are not qualified or authorised to gain access.

P.3 Definitions for use with AS/NZS 62368.1 products

For the purposes of this Standard, ES1, ES2 and ES3 refer to voltage and current classifications only.

Voltage and current limits for ES1 and ES2 are those specified in AS/NZS 62368.1.

Note: There are no voltage and current limits for ES3.

P.3.1 Electrical Energy Source Class 1 (ES1)

ES1 is a class 1 electrical energy source with touch current or prospective touch voltage levels not exceeding ES1 limits under—

- (a) normal operating conditions;
- (b) abnormal operating conditions; and
- (c) single fault conditions of a component, device or insulation not serving as a safeguard;

and not exceeding ES2 limits under single fault conditions of a basic safeguard or of a supplementary safeguard.

ES1 may be accessible to an Ordinary Person.

Note: ES1 provides the equivalent level of safety to SELV as specified in AS/NZS 60950.1.

[Adapted from AS/NZS 62368.1]

P.3.2 Electrical Energy Source Class 2 (ES2)

ES2 is a class 2 electrical energy source where both the prospective touch voltage and the touch current exceed the limits for ES1 and under—

- (a) normal operating conditions;
- (b) abnormal operating conditions; and
- (c) single fault conditions;

and either the prospective touch voltage or the touch current does not exceed the limit for ES2.

At least one basic safeguard is required between ES2 and an Ordinary Person. ES2 may be accessible to an Instructed Person and a Skilled Person.

A circuit with telephone ringing signals as defined in Annex H of AS/NZS 62368.1 is also considered ES2.

Note: ES2 provides the equivalent level of safety to ELV as specified in AS/NZS 60950.1.

[Adapted from AS/NZS 62368.1 MOD]

P.3.3 Electrical Energy Source Class 3 (ES3)

ES3 is a class 3 electrical energy source where both the prospective touch voltage and the touch current exceed the limit for ES2.

Note 1: ES3 is considered hazardous.

Note 2: ES3 is equivalent to 'hazardous energy source' as specified in AS/NZS 60950.1. Safety requirements for ES3 communications and other ES3 circuits are specified in this Standard.

[Adapted from AS/NZS 62368.1 MOD]

P.4 Comparison of AS/NZS 60950.1 and AS/NZS 62368.1 terms

An informative comparison of terms between AS/NZS 62368.1 and earlier Standards can be found in Annex W of AS/NZS 62368.1. Table W.3 of AS/NZS 62368.1 Annex W compares AS/NZS 60950.1 terms with AS/NZS 62368.1 terms. The following guidelines in Table P1 are provided for information only. Where terms are compared, it means that they provide equivalent safety outcomes, provided all the requirements in the applicable standard have been fulfilled. Equivalence in these cases does not mean the technical parameters are identical.

Table P1

AS/NZS 60950.1 comparison of terms with AS/NZS 62368.1

AS/NZS 60950.1	AS/NZS 62368.1	Notes
ELV	ES2	ELV (up to 42.4 V peak or 60 V d.c. in AS/NZS 60950.1) is separated from hazardous energy source by basic insulation only. ELV may receive transient voltages or currents from circuits external to the Building, as such it is classified as ES2 for the purposes of this Standard.
SELV	ES1	SELV (60 V d.c. or 42.4 V peak) and ES1 both have protection against hazardous energy source by double or reinforced insulation (safeguards) and both may be touched by the user (Ordinary Person).
Limited current circuit	ES1	In AS/NZS 60950.1 a limited current circuit is limited to 2 mA d.c. or 0.7 mA peak. AS/NZS 62368.1 does not use the term 'limited current circuit' but does, have comparable requirements by way of current limits for ES1.
TNV	ES2	Telecommunications Network Voltage can be one of three levels. Generally, TNV-1 is up to 60 V d.c. but may have higher transients from circuits external to the Building; TNV-2 is up to 120 V d.c. but no transients; TNV-3 is up to 120 V d.c. but may have transients. The Ordinary Person must be separated from contact with possible transient circuits. All TNV circuits are classified as ES2 unless a professional engineer advises otherwise for each situation.
Hazardous voltage	ES3	AS/NZS 62368.1 does not use the term 'hazardous'. Instead it states that any energy source exceeding ES2 limits is classified as ES3 and as such is classified as hazardous. ES3 circuits must not be accessible to the Ordinary Person or the Instructed Person by the use of double or reinforced safeguards. The Skilled Person may have access to ES3 for safe work but protection must be provided to guard against accidental contact with another class 3 energy source.
Restricted access location	Restricted access area	Restricted Access Area is the term used in AS/NZS 62368.1. This is a change in terminology in the new safety standard.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

This bibliography contains information about documents referred to in notes and informative appendices in this Standard. Further information on the listed documents, including how to obtain copies, can be found on the following internet sites:

www.commsalliance.com.au
www.iso.org
www.standards.org.au

www.iec.ch
www.itu.int

Australian Standards

AS/NZS 1367 Coaxial cable and optical fibre systems for the RF distribution of digital television, radio and in-house analog television signals in single and multiple dwelling installations

AS/NZS 1477 PVC pipes and fittings for pressure applications

AS/NZS 2967 Optical fibre communication cabling systems safety

AS/NZS 3013 Electrical installations – Classification of the fire and mechanical performance of wiring system elements

AS/NZS 3015 Electrical installations – Extra-low voltage d.c. power supplies and service earthing within public telecommunications networks

AS/NZS 3084 Telecommunications installations – Telecommunications pathways and spaces for commercial buildings (ISO/IEC 18010:2002, MOD)

AS/NZS 3085.1 (R2016) Telecommunications installations – Administration of communications cabling systems – Basic requirements

AS 3818.11 Timber - Heavy structural products - Visually graded - Utility poles

AS/NZS 4065 Concrete utility services poles

AS/NZS 4676 Structural design requirements for utility services poles

AS/NZS 4677 Steel utility services poles

AS/NZS 11801 Information technology -- Generic cabling for customer premises

Part 1: General requirements

AS 11801 Information technology -- Generic cabling for customer premises

Part 2: Office premises

Part 3: Industrial premises

Part 4: Single-tenant homes

Part 5: Data centres

Part 6: Distributed building services

AS/NZS ISO/IEC 14763.2 Telecommunications Installations – Implementation of Customer Premises Cabling - Part 2: Planning and Installation

AS/NZS 60079.10.1 Explosive atmospheres - Classification of areas - Explosive gas atmospheres

AS/NZS 60079.10.2 Explosive atmospheres - Classification of areas - Explosive dust atmospheres

Communications Alliance Standards

AS/CA S003 Requirements for Customer Access Equipment for connection to a Telecommunications Network

Part 1: General

Part 2: Analogue and TDM based technologies

Part 3: Packet and cell based technologies

Communications Alliance Industry Codes and Guidelines

C524 External Telecommunication Cable Networks

C559.1 Unconditioned Local Loop Service (ULLS) Network Deployment–

Part 1: ULLS Performance Requirements

G649 Cabling existing telecommunications services in the customer's premises for the nbn

Part 1: Cabler instructions

Part 2: Installation cabling diagrams (Rewiring Guide)

International Standards

ISO 80000-1:2009 Quantities and Units – Part 1: General

ISO/IEC 11801 Information technology -- Generic cabling for customer premises

Part 1: General requirements

Part 2: Office premises

Part 3: Industrial premises

Part 4: Single-tenant homes

Part 5: Data centres

Part 6: Distributed building services

IEC 62368-3 Audio/video, information and communication technology equipment - Part 3: Safety aspects for DC power transfer through communication cables and ports

ITU-T Recommendations

K.21 Resistibility of telecommunication equipment installed in customer premises to overvoltages and overcurrents

Other references

HB 100–2000 (CJC 4) Coordination of Power and Telecommunications — Manual for the establishment of safe work practices and the minimization of operational interference between power systems and paired cable telecommunications systems

SA TS 29125:2019 Information technology - Telecommunications cabling requirements for remote powering of terminal equipment (ISO/IEC TS 29125:2017, MOD)

PARTICIPANTS

The Working Committee responsible for the revisions made to this Standard consisted of the following organisations:

Organisation	Membership
Amazon	Voting
Australian Communications and Media Authority (ACMA)	Non-voting
Australian Digital & Telecommunications Industry Association (ADTIA)	Voting
Building Industry Consulting Service International (BICSI South Pacific)	Voting
Casa Systems	Voting
Commscope	Non-voting
Cumarsáid	Voting
nbn	Voting
National Electrical and Communications Association (NECA)	Voting
Optus	Voting
Prysmian	Voting
Siemon Company	Voting
Telstra	Voting
The University of Sydney	Voting

This Working Committee was chaired by Murray Teale of VTI Services. Mike Johns and James Duck of Communications Alliance provided project management support.

Communications Alliance was formed in 2006 to provide a unified voice for the Australian communications industry and to lead it into the next generation of converging networks, technologies and services.

In pursuing its goals, Communications Alliance offers a forum for the industry to make coherent and constructive contributions to policy development and debate.

Communications Alliance seeks to facilitate open, effective and ethical competition between service providers while ensuring efficient, safe operation of networks, the provision of innovative services and the enhancement of consumer outcomes.

It is committed to the achievement of the policy objective of the *Telecommunications Act 1997* - the greatest practicable use of industry self-regulation without imposing undue financial and administrative burdens on industry.



**Published by:
COMMUNICATIONS
ALLIANCE LTD**

**Level 12
75 Miller Street
North Sydney
NSW 2060 Australia**

**Correspondence
PO Box 444
Milsons Point
NSW 1565**

**T 61 2 9959 9111
F 61 2 9954 6136
E info@commsalliance.com.au
www.commsalliance.com.au
ABN 56 078 026 507**

Care should be taken to ensure the material used is from the current version of the Standard or Industry Code and that it is updated whenever the Standard or Code is amended or revised. The number and date of the Standard or Code should therefore be clearly identified. If in doubt please contact Communications Alliance

1 74000 460 4